arXiv:2205.09510v3 [quant-ph] 1 Jun 2022

Foundations and Trends® in Signal Processing

An Introduction to Quantum Machine Learning for Engineers

Suggested Citation: Osvaldo Simeone (2022), "An Introduction to Quantum Machine Learning for Engineers", Foundations and Trends® in Signal Processing: Vol. xx, No. xx, pp 1–18. DOI: 10.1561/XXXXXXXXX.

This article may be used only for the purpose of research, teaching, and/or private study. Commercial use or systematic downloading (by robots or other automatic processes) is prohibited without explicit Publisher approval.

now
the essence of knowledge
Boston — Delft

Contents

1 Classical Bit (Cbit) and Quantum Bit (Qubit) 7

1.1 Introduction . . . 7
1.2 Random Classical Bit . . . 7
1.3 Qubit . . . 11
1.4 Single-Qubit Quantum Gates . . . 16
1.5 Amplitude Diagrams . . . 27
1.6 Interference . . . 28
1.7 Conclusions . . . 30
1.8 Recommended Resources . . . 31
1.9 Problems . . . 31

2 Classical Bits (Cbits) and Quantum Bits (Qubits) 33

2.1 Introduction . . . 33
2.2 Multiple Random Classical Bits . . . 33
2.3 Multiple Qubits . . . 40
2.4 Closed Quantum Systems, Unitary Transformations, and Parallel Single-Qubit Gates . . . 44
2.5 Entanglement . . . 47
2.6 Multi-Qubit Quantum Gates . . . 52
2.7 Creating Entanglement . . . 60
2.8 Amplitude Diagrams . . . 62

2.9 Superdense Coding . . . 64
2.10 Trading Quantum and Classical Resources . . . 67
2.11 Conclusions . . . 68
2.12 Recommended Resources . . . 68
2.13 Problems . . . 68

3 Generalizing Quantum Measurements (Part I) 71
3.1 Introduction . . . 71
3.2 Measurements in an Arbitrary Orthonormal Basis . . . 71
3.3 Partial Measurements . . . 78
3.4 Non-Selective Partial Measurements and Decoherence . . . 84
3.5 Density Matrices . . . 86
3.6 Partial Trace . . . 92
3.7 Conclusions . . . 97
3.8 Recommended Resources . . . 97
3.9 Problems . . . 97

4 Quantum Computing 106
4.1 Introduction . . . 106
4.2 Gate-Based Model of Quantum Computation . . . 106
4.3 Controlled Shift Operators and Quantum RAM . . . 107
4.4 Deutsch's Problem and Quantum Parallelism . . . 113
4.5 Phase Kick-Back . . . 115
4.6 Validity of Deutsch's Algorithm . . . 118
4.7 No Cloning Theorem . . . 119
4.8 Classical Cloning: Basis-Copying Gate . . . 121
4.9 Conclusions . . . 122
4.10 Recommended Resources . . . 123
4.11 Problems . . . 123

5 Generalizing Quantum Measurements (Part II) 125
5.1 Introduction . . . 125
5.2 Projective Measurements . . . 125
5.3 Observables . . . 133
5.4 Implementing Projective Measurements . . . 140
5.5 Quantum Error Correction . . . 143

5.6 Implementing Projective Measurements with Ancillas . . . 148
5.7 Positive Operator-Valued Measurements . . . 153
5.8 Quantum Channels . . . 157
5.9 Conclusions . . . 161
5.10 Recommended Resources . . . 161
5.11 Problems . . . 162

6 Quantum Machine Learning **164**
6.1 Introduction . . . 164
6.2 What is Quantum Machine Learning? . . . 165
6.3 A Taxonomy of Quantum Machine Learning . . . 167
6.4 Ansatz and Parametrized Quantum Circuit . . . 170
6.5 Variational Quantum Eigensolver . . . 177
6.6 Estimating the Gradient of the Expected Value of an Observable . . . 185
6.7 Unsupervised Learning for Generative Models . . . 188
6.8 Supervised Learning . . . 193
6.9 Beyond Generic Ansatzes . . . 201
6.10 Beyond Angle Encoding . . . 203
6.11 Conclusions . . . 205
6.12 Recommended Resources . . . 206
6.13 Problems . . . 206

Acknowledgements **211**

References **212**

An Introduction to Quantum Machine Learning for Engineers

Osvaldo Simeone[1]

[1] *King's College London*

ABSTRACT

In the current noisy intermediate-scale quantum (NISQ) era, quantum machine learning is emerging as a dominant paradigm to program gate-based quantum computers. In quantum machine learning, the gates of a quantum circuit are parametrized, and the parameters are tuned via classical optimization based on data and on measurements of the outputs of the circuit. Parametrized quantum circuits (PQCs) can efficiently address combinatorial optimization problems, implement probabilistic generative models, and carry out inference (classification and regression). This monograph provides a self-contained introduction to quantum machine learning for an audience of engineers with a background in probability and linear algebra. It first describes the necessary background, concepts, and tools necessary to describe quantum operations and measurements. Then, it covers parametrized quantum circuits, the variational quantum eigensolver, as well as unsupervised and supervised quantum machine learning formulations.

Osvaldo Simeone (2022), "An Introduction to Quantum Machine Learning for Engineers", Foundations and Trends® in Signal Processing: Vol. xx, No. xx, pp 1–18.
DOI: 10.1561/XXXXXXXXX.
©2022 ...

Preface

Motivation

As many engineers, I have developed an early fascination for quantum theory – for its history, its counterintuitive predictions, its central role in the development of many existing technologies (semiconductors, lasers, MRI, atomic clocks) and, perhaps above all, its promise to unlock future, revolutionary, paradigms in materials, chemical, industrial, computer, and communication engineering.

At first, the topic is inviting for an engineer with my background (electrical and information engineering): The mathematical formalism is familiar, based as it is on linear algebra and probability; and concepts with wide-ranging and intriguing implications, such as superposition and entanglement, can be easily described on paper. Spend more time with it, however, and the field reveals its complexity, becoming for many, the former me included, too abstruse to invite further study. Particularly unfamiliar are ideas and architectures underlying key quantum algorithms, such as Shor's factorization method. As if that was not enough, the impressions that most algorithmic breakthroughs are by now textbook material and that all the "action" is currently focused on scaling hardware implementations have kept me from engaging with the state of the art in quantum computing.

This monograph is motivated by a number of recent developments

that appear to define a possible new role for researchers with an engineering profile similar to mine. First, there are now several software libraries – such as Qiskit and PennyLane – that make programming quantum algorithms more accessible, while also providing cloud-based access to actual quantum computers. Second, a new framework is emerging for programming quantum algorithms to be run on current quantum hardware: quantum machine learning.

Quantum Machine Learning

Quantum computing algorithms have been traditionally designed by hand assuming the availability of fault-tolerant quantum processors supporting a large number of qubits (a qubit is the basic unit of quantum information and computing) and quantum operations, also known as quantum gates. In practice, current quantum computers support a few tens of qubits, and projections are that in the near term the number of qubits will not exceed around 1000. Quantum machine learning refers to an emerging, alternative design paradigm that follows a two-step methodology akin to classical machine learning. In it, one first fixes a priori a, possibly generic, parametrized architecture for the quantum gates defining quantum algorithm, and then uses classical optimization to tune the parameters of the gates.

In more detail, as sketched in Fig. 1, in quantum machine learning, the quantum algorithm is defined by a circuit whose constituent quantum gates implement operations that depend on a vector of free parameters θ. Measurements of the quantum state produced by the quantum computer are fed to a classical processor, along with data. The classical optimizer produces updates to the vector θ with the goal of minimizing some designer-specified loss function.

The quantum machine learning architecture of Fig. 1 has a number of potential advantages over the standard approach of handcrafting quantum algorithms assuming fault-tolerant quantum computers:

- By keeping the quantum computer in the loop, the classical optimizer can directly account for the non-idealities and limitations of quantum operations via measurements of the output of the

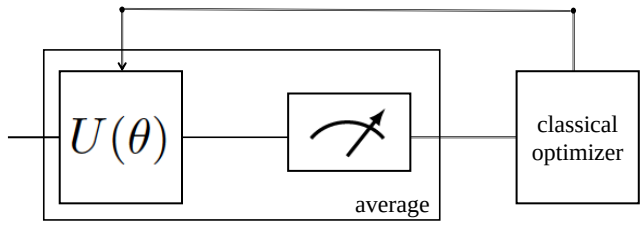


Figure 1: The high-level architecture of the quantum machine learning design methodology. A parametrized quantum circuit with a pre-specified architecture is optimized via its vector of parameters, θ, by a classical optimizer based on data and measurements of its outputs.

quantum computer.

- If the parametrized quantum algorithm is sufficiently flexible and the classical optimizer sufficiently effective, the approach may automatically design well-performing quantum algorithms that would have been hard to optimize by hand.

Important open research questions in the field of quantum machine learning include the definition of suitable building blocks for the parametrized quantum circuit; the development of optimization algorithms and quantum measurements to efficiently explore the space of model parameters θ; the understanding from a theoretical perspective of the generalization capacity of quantum models; the definition of applications and use cases for quantum machine learning; and so on. It is my hope that researchers who may not have otherwise contributed to these research directions would be motivated to do so upon reading this monograph.

Goal and Organization

The main goal of this monograph is to present a self-contained introduction to quantum information processing and quantum machine learning for a readership of engineers with a background in linear algebra and

probability. My ambition in presenting this text is to offer a resource that may allow more researchers with no prior exposure to quantum theory to contribute to the field of quantum machine learning with new ideas and methods.

The monograph is written as a textbook, with no references except for end-of-chapter sections. References are kept to a minimum, and are mostly limited to books that the reader may peruse for additional information on different topics introduced in these pages. I have also included problems at the end of each chapter with the main aims of reviewing some key ideas described in the text and of inviting the reader to explore topics beyond this monograph.

It may be worth emphasizing that the text is meant to be read sequentially, as I have attempted to introduce notations and concepts progressively from the first to the last page.

The monograph does not include discussions about specific applications and use cases. There are several reasons for this. First, many applications are domain specific, pertaining fields like quantum chemistry, and are deemed to be outside the scope of this text, which focuses on concepts and tools. Second, many existing generic tasks and data sets currently used in the quantum machine learning literature are quite simplistic, and admittedly yield little insight into the potential of the technology. The reader is referred to research papers, appearing on a daily basis on repositories like arXiv, for up-to-date experimental results.

The rest of the text is organized in the following chapters.

Chapter 1. Classical Bit (Cbit) and Quantum Bit (Qubit): This chapter introduces the concept of qubit through an algebraic generalization of random classical bits (cbits). A qubit can evolve in quantum systems via reversible (unitary) transformations – also known as quantum gates – or via measurements. The mathematical formalism underlying the description of both quantum gates and measurements is also covered in the chapter. Finally, the chapter illustrates a key difference in the behavior of random cbits and qubits, namely the phenomenon of interference.

Chapter 2. Classical Bits (Cbits) and Quantum Bits (Qubits): This chapter extends the concepts introduced in the previous chapter,

including quantum gates and measurement, to systems comprising multiple qubits. The new phenomenon of entanglement – a form of correlation between quantum systems with no classical counterpart – is introduced, and superdense coding is presented as an application of entanglement.

Chapter 3. Generalizing quantum measurements (Part I): The third chapter presents two important generalizations of quantum measurements, namely measurements in an arbitrary basis and non-selective measurements. Decoherence, density matrices, and partial trace are also presented as concepts arising naturally from the introduction non-selective measurements.

Chapter 4. Quantum computing: Chapter 4 presents a brief introduction to the quantum computing model, culminating in the description of Deutsch's algorithm, the first example of a quantum solution that can provably improve over classical algorithms. The chapter also describes the no cloning theorem, which sets important constraints on the design of quantum computing algorithms.

Generalizing quantum measurements (Part II): This chapter presents two further extensions of quantum measurements: projective measurements and positive operator-valued measurements (POVMs). POVMs represent the most general form of quantum measurement. As an example of the application of projective measurements, the problem of quantum error correction is briefly introduced; while unambiguous state detection is presented as technique enabled by POVMs. Observables are covered, and the chapter ends with a description of quantum channels as non-selective quantum measurements.

Chapter 6. Quantum machine learning: The final chapter provides an introduction to quantum machine learning that builds on the material covered in the previous chapters. After a description of the landscape of quantum machine learning methods, the concepts of parametrized quantum circuits and ansatz are introduced. These are leveraged to describe the variational quantum eigensolver (VQE), as well as unsupervised and supervised learning strategies for settings in which data are classical and processing is quantum. An outlook is also provided pointing to more advanced techniques and directions for research.

1

Classical Bit (Cbit) and Quantum Bit (Qubit)

1.1 Introduction

This chapter introduces the qubit as the basic unit of quantum information and computing. To this end, we start by reviewing classical bits (cbits) and random cbits. Then, we present the qubit as an algebraic "extension" of the two-dimensional probability distribution of a random cbit to a complex, normalized, two-dimensional vector. The chapter will also present the two main ways in which a qubit can evolve over time: unitary operations, also known as quantum gates, and measurements. While quantum gates describe the evolution of a qubit in a closed system, measurements convert quantum information to classical information by coupling the qubit with a measurement instrument.

1.2 Random Classical Bit

1.2.1 A Classical Bit as a One-Hot Vector

A **classical bit (cbit)** is a system that can be in two *unambiguously distinguishable, or orthogonal*, levels. Examples include on-off switches and up-down magnets. Mathematically, the **state** of a cbit is represented by a logical binary digit taking values 0 or 1.

cbit	amplitude vector
0	$\|0\rangle = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$
1	$\|1\rangle = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$

Table 1.1: A cbit can be represented as a binary digit or as a two-dimensional one-hot vector, with the latter being described using Dirac's ket notation.

Alternatively, the state of a cbit can be described by a two-dimensional **"one-hot" amplitude vector**. As illustrated in Table 1.1, the one-hot amplitude vector contains a single "1" digit, whose position indicates whether the cbit takes value 0 or 1. Specifically, a cbit taking value 0 is encoded by a one-hot vector with a "1" digit in the first position, while a cbit taking value 1 is encoded by one-hot vector with a "1" digit in the second position.

1.2.2 Dirac's Ket and Bra Notations

Dirac's **ket** notation is conventionally used in quantum theory to identify *column* vectors. Accordingly, a column vector is represented as $|a\rangle$, where a is an identifier for the vector. For a single cbit, as illustrated in Table 1.1, the ket vector representing the cbit value 0, which serves as identifier, is the one-hot amplitude vector

$$|0\rangle = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \tag{1.1}$$

while the ket vector representing the cbit value 1 is

$$|1\rangle = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}. \tag{1.2}$$

Dirac's **bra** notation is used to identify *row* vectors. Given a ket $|a\rangle$, the bra $\langle a|$ is defined as

$$\langle a| = |a\rangle^{\dagger}, \tag{1.3}$$

where $\dagger$ represents the Hermitian transpose, i.e., the complex conjugate transpose, operation. For example, the bra vector corresponding to the

bit value 1 is

$$\langle 1| = [\ 0 \quad 1\ ]. \tag{1.4}$$

We will see later in this chapter that quantum states involve complex numbers, making it important to use a Hermitian transpose, rather than a standard transpose, operation to define the bra in (1.4).

The **inner product** between two kets $|a\rangle$ and $|b\rangle$ is defined as

$$|a\rangle^\dagger|b\rangle = \langle a||b\rangle = \langle a|b\rangle, \tag{1.5}$$

where the last expression is known as Dirac's **bra-ket** notation for the inner product. (The pun is intended.) Note that we have the equality

$$\langle b|a\rangle = \langle a|b\rangle^*, \tag{1.6}$$

where $(\cdot)^*$ represents the complex conjugate operation. The **squared norm** of a ket $|a\rangle$ is accordingly defined as $||a||^2 = \langle a|a\rangle$.

The kets $|0\rangle$ and $|1\rangle$ define an **orthonormal basis** for the linear space of two-dimensional vectors. In fact, the two vectors are orthogonal, i.e.,

$$\langle 0|1\rangle = \langle 1|0\rangle = 0, \tag{1.7}$$

and they have unitary norm, i.e.,

$$\langle 0|0\rangle = \langle 1|1\rangle = 1. \tag{1.8}$$

Throughout this monograph, for reasons that will be made clear later in this chapter, we will take all bra and ket vectors (not only $|0\rangle$ and $|1\rangle$) to have **unitary norm**. The assumption of unitary norm vectors amounts to the condition

$$|||a\rangle||_2^2 = ||\langle a|||_2^2 = \langle a|a\rangle = 1 \tag{1.9}$$

for all kets $|a\rangle$.

1.2.3 A Random Cbit as a Probability Vector

The amplitude, one-hot, vector representation of a cbit is clearly less efficient than the direct specification in terms of a single logical bit. In fact, the one-hot vector requires two binary digits to describe a single

cbit. Despite this shortcoming, amplitude vectors are routinely used in machine learning when dealing with discrete random variables.

The **probability distribution, or probability mass function**, of a random cbit is given by the two-dimensional vector

$$p = \begin{bmatrix} p_0 \\ p_1 \end{bmatrix}, \tag{1.10}$$

where $p_x \geq 0$ represents the probability of the random cbit taking value $x \in \{0, 1\}$, and we have the condition

$$p_0 + p_1 = 1. \tag{1.11}$$

Note that the norm of a probability vector is generally different from 1. Hence, following the convention described in the previous subsection, the ket notation is not used for vector p.

By the definition (1.10), the probability of observing value $x \in \{0, 1\}$ can be computed via the inner product

$$|x\rangle^\dagger p = \langle x|p = p_x, \tag{1.12}$$

where we recall that $|x\rangle$ is the one-hot amplitude vector representing cbit value $x \in \{0, 1\}$ (see Table 1.1).

Being two dimensional, the probability vector (1.10) for a single random cbit can be written as a linear combination of the orthonormal basis vectors $\{|0\rangle, |1\rangle\}$ as

$$p = \begin{bmatrix} p_0 \\ p_1 \end{bmatrix} = p_0|0\rangle + p_1|1\rangle. \tag{1.13}$$

In words, the probability vector (1.10) can be viewed as the **"superposition"** of the two orthogonal vectors $|0\rangle$ and $|1\rangle$, each representing one of the two possible states of the system. The weights of this superposition are given by the corresponding probabilities p_0 and p_1.

1.2.4 Measuring a Random Cbit

A random cbit seems to "contain more information" than a deterministic one, since its state is defined by the probability vector p. This is in the sense that, in order to specify the state of a random cbit, one needs to

describe the probability p_0 or p_1 (since $p_0 + p_1 = 1$), while the state of a deterministic cbit is clearly described by a single binary digit. But how much information can be actually extracted from the observation of a deterministic cbit or a random cbit?

Suppose first that you are handed a deterministic cbit, e.g., a coin resting on one of its two faces. Evidently, a single glance at the coin would reveal its binary value.

Consider now being given a random cbit – say a slot machine with a single arm producing either digit 0 or 1 with probabilities p_0 and p_1, respectively. In order to extract the state of the random cbit, that is, its probability vector p, a single "glance" is not sufficient. Rather, one needs to carry out multiple **measurements** of the random cbit, producing a number of *independent realizations* of the random cbit, each drawn from probability distribution p. From the obtained measurement outputs, one can *estimate* the probability p_x, for $x \in \{0, 1\}$, by evaluating the fraction of realizations of the random cbit with value x.

In the example of the slot machine, obtaining multiple measurements entails playing the arm of the slot machine several times. Importantly, each independent measurement requires that the system be reset to the original state so as to generate a new realization of the same random cbit. Quantitatively, using the outlined fraction-based estimator, by Chebyshev's inequality, one needs $O(1/\epsilon^2)$ independent measurements of the random cbits in order to produce an estimate with precision $\epsilon > 0$.

1.3 Qubit

In this section, building on the basic background material presented so far in this chapter, we introduce the notion of a qubit.

1.3.1 A Qubit as a Complex Amplitude Vector

A **quantum bit (qubit)** is a two-level quantum system, such as the up-down spin of an electron or the vertical-horizontal polarization of a photon. In a manner somewhat analogous to a random cbit, whose state is defined by a probability vector p as in (1.13), the **state** of a

qubit is described by a two-dimensional **amplitude vector**

$$|\psi\rangle = \begin{bmatrix} \alpha_0 \\ \alpha_1 \end{bmatrix} = \alpha_0|0\rangle + \alpha_1|1\rangle. \tag{1.14}$$

There are two key differences between the state $|\psi\rangle$ in (1.14) of a quantum qubit and the state p of a random cbit:

- Unlike a probability vector p, the amplitude vector has *complex* entries α_0 and α_1. (Note that complex entries include real-valued entries as a special case.)
- The qubit state vector (1.14) has the defining property of having *unitary norm*, i.e.,

$$|||\psi\rangle||_2^2 = \langle\psi|\psi\rangle = |\alpha_0|^2 + |\alpha_1|^2 = 1. \tag{1.15}$$

  This condition is different from the property (1.11) satisfied by probability vectors, which stipulates that the sum of the entries of p – and not the norm of the vector – equals 1. We observe that property (1.15) is consistent with the convention introduced in the previous section of considering all kets (and bras) to have unitary norm.

While being distinct from the state of a random cbit, the qubit state (1.14) recovers as special cases the two possible states, expressed as one-hot amplitude vectors, of a deterministic cbit. In fact, setting the amplitudes as $\alpha_0 = 1$ (and hence $\alpha_1 = 0$), or $\alpha_1 = 1$ (and hence $\alpha_0 = 0$), recovers the deterministic cbit states $|0\rangle$ and $|1\rangle$, respectively. Therefore, a qubit that can only assume states $|0\rangle$ and $|1\rangle$ is equivalent to a deterministic cbit.

By (1.14), we say that the qubit is in a **superposition** of states $|0\rangle$ and $|1\rangle$, with respective complex amplitudes α_0 and α_1. Mathematically, this implies that the state of a qubit is a vector that lies in a two-dimensional *complex* linear vector space, referred to as the **Hilbert space** of dimension two. The states $|0\rangle$ and $|1\rangle$ form the so-called **computational basis** of the Hilbert space. A geometric interpretation of a quantum state, simplified by representing real amplitudes, is provided by the left part of Fig. 1.1.

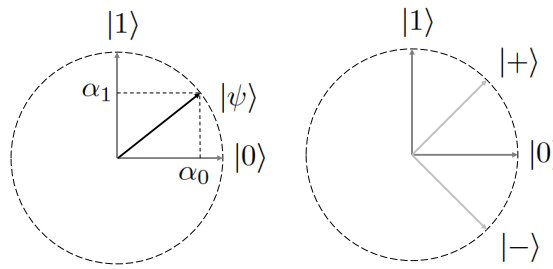


Figure 1.1: (left) An illustration of the two-dimensional Hilbert space with the computational basis $\{|0\rangle, |1\rangle\}$ and a given qubit state $|\psi\rangle$ in (1.14); (right) An illustration of computational and diagonal bases.

Being a two-dimensional vector, the state of the qubit can be equivalently expressed as a superposition of any two orthonormal vectors forming a basis of the Hilbert space. An important example is given by the so-called **diagonal basis**, which consists of the two vectors

$$|+\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|0\rangle + |1\rangle) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \tag{1.16}$$

and

$$|-\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|0\rangle - |1\rangle) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}. \tag{1.17}$$

It can be directly checked that vectors $|+\rangle$ and $|-\rangle$ are orthogonal and that they have unitary norm. They are illustrated in the right part of Fig. 1.1. The qubit state (1.14) can be expressed as a superposition of diagonal states as

$$|\psi\rangle = \begin{bmatrix} \alpha_0 \\ \alpha_1 \end{bmatrix} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(\alpha_0 + \alpha_1)|+\rangle + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(\alpha_0 - \alpha_1)|-\rangle. \tag{1.18}$$

1.3.2 Measuring a Qubit: von Neumann Measurements

In a manner somewhat similar to a random cbit (see Sec. 1.2.4), the state of a qubit is only accessible through **measurements** of the qubit. Note that we will henceforth refer to a qubit and to its state interchangeably. A measurement takes as input a *qubit* in an arbitrary state $|\psi\rangle$, as in (1.14), and produces a *cbit* as the measurement's output, while leaving the qubit in a generally different state from the original state $|\psi\rangle$.

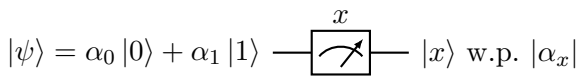


Figure 1.2: A von Neumann measurement in the computational basis, also known as a standard measurement, for a single qubit. (The abbreviation "w.p." stands for "with probability".)

The most basic type of measurement is known as **von Neumann measurement in the computational basis**, or **standard measurement** for short. Given an input qubit state $|\psi\rangle = \alpha_0|0\rangle + \alpha_1|1\rangle$, a standard measurement is defined by the following two properties illustrated in Fig. 1.2:

- **Born's rule**: The probability of observing cbit $x \in \{0, 1\}$ is

$$\Pr[\text{measurement output equals } x \in \{0, 1\}] = |\alpha_x|^2; \tag{1.19}$$

- **"Collapse" of the state**: If the measured cbit is $x \in \{0, 1\}$, the **post-measurement state** of the qubit is $|x\rangle$.

Measurements are typically depicted as shown in Fig. 1.2. Accordingly, a measurement is denoted via a "meter" block, with the output cbit $x \in \{0, 1\}$ indicated on top of the block and the post-measurement state shown as the output to the right of the block.

By the Born rule (1.19), the absolute value squared $|\alpha_x|^2$ of the quantum amplitude α_x defines the probability of a measurement outcome $x \in \{0, 1\}$. Geometrically, this probability corresponds to the magnitude squared of the projection of the input state $|\psi\rangle$ into the computational-basis vector $|x\rangle$ (see Fig. 1.1). Note that the quadratic dependence of the measurement probabilities on the amplitudes in the qubit state vector explains the difference between the conditions (1.11) and (1.15) satisfied by probability vectors and amplitude vectors. One possible way to think of the absolute value squared of the amplitude that appears in Born's rule (1.19) is as a measure of intensity, e.g., of a photon beam.

The Born rule can be equivalently expressed using the bra-ket notation by noting that the x-th amplitude of qubit state $|\psi\rangle$ can be obtained as

$$\alpha_x = |x\rangle^\dagger |\psi\rangle = \langle x|\psi\rangle, \tag{1.20}$$

which implies

$$|\alpha_x|^2 = |\langle x|\psi\rangle|^2. \tag{1.21}$$

It is also useful to note that, by (1.21), the probability $|\alpha_x|^2$ can be expressed as

$$|\alpha_x|^2 = \langle x|\psi\rangle\langle x|\psi\rangle^* = \langle x|\psi\rangle\langle\psi|x\rangle = \langle x|\rho|x\rangle, \tag{1.22}$$

where $\rho = |\psi\rangle\langle\psi|$ is the so-called density matrix (to be formally introduced in Chapter 3).

By the "collapse" of the state property, while the input state $|\psi\rangle$ is generally unknown (that is why one measures it), the post-measurement state is fully determined by the output of the measurement. In fact, the measurement "collapses" the input qubit state $|\psi\rangle$ to the computational-basis vector $|x\rangle$ corresponding to the measurement's output cbit $x \in \{0, 1\}$.

As we have discussed in the previous subsection, a qubit that can only take states $|0\rangle$ and $|1\rangle$ behaves a standard deterministic cbit. As a sanity check, one can directly verify that, by Born's rule, measuring a qubit in state $|x\rangle$, for $x \in \{0, 1\}$, returns output x with probability 1, while leaving the qubit state unchanged.

To conclude this section, it should be mentioned that the interpretation of the "collapse of the waveform" property is much debated in physics and philosophy (and in movies, where the "many-world" interpretation provides an easy excuse for a plot twist).

We will see in Chapter 3, and then again in Chapter 5, that there are different types of measurements; until then, we will always assume standard measurements.

1.3.3 Random Cbit vs. Qubit

By Born's rule, if the amplitudes $\{\alpha_x\}_{x=0}^1$ are real and non-negative, we can write the state (1.14) of a qubit as

$$|\psi\rangle = \begin{bmatrix} \sqrt{p_0} \\ \sqrt{p_1} \end{bmatrix}, \tag{1.23}$$

where p_x is the probability (1.19) that a measurement of the qubit returns the cbit x. Accordingly, there may be a temptation to think

of a qubit state as the square root of a probability vector. Even more treacherously, this perspective may lead one to treat a qubit as merely being a random cbit defined by a probability vector $p = [|\alpha_0|^2, |\alpha_1|^2]^\dagger$. Accordingly, one would model a qubit in the superposition state (1.14) as having a true, but unknown, classical state $|x\rangle$, with $x \in \{0, 1\}$, which is only revealed upon measurement. This temptation should be resisted!

By Born's rule (1.19), the viewpoint described in the previous paragraph provides the correct description of the output of the standard measurement of a qubit. However, a qubit in state (1.23) behaves very differently from a random cbit state defined by the probability vector $p = [|\alpha_0|^2, |\alpha_1|^2]^\dagger$ in terms of how it evolves over time and of how it interacts with other qubits. Specifically, as we will detail in Sec. 1.6, the two amplitudes α_0 and α_1 defining the superposition state $|\psi\rangle$ can combine over time in ways that produce subsequent measurements that cannot be described by the evolution of a random cbit. (So, Schrodinger's cat is actually neither dead nor alive, but it behaves according to a superposition of the two states.)

1.4 Single-Qubit Quantum Gates

In this section, we describe how the state of a qubit evolves in a closed quantum system, introducing the key concept of a quantum gate.

1.4.1 Closed Quantum Systems and Unitary Transformations

Consider a **closed quantum system** consisting of a single qubit that is not subject to measurement. Note that implementing a measurement would require the presence of an instrument connecting the qubit to the outside world of an "observer". In a closed system, by the laws of quantum physics, the state of a qubit evolves according to **linear and reversible transformations**. Linearity may come as a surprise, as one may expect that nature could produce more complex behavior, but it is a model that has stood the test of time through a large number of experimental validations. Reversibility is a consequence of the principle that a closed system should conserve information.

To elaborate on this last point, irreversible operations imply a loss of

information, and deleting information requires energy. (By **Landauer's principle**, it specifically requires $k_B T \ln(2)$ joule per bit, where k_B is the Boltzmann constant and T is the temperature of the heat sink in kelvins). Therefore, a closed system consisting of a single qubit cannot delete information, as this would entail the injection of energy from the outside. It follows that transformations in a closed system should be reversible. In contrast, measurements correspond to interactions with external instruments, and are not reversible.

The only non-trivial linear reversible operation mapping a deterministic cbit state to a deterministic cbit state is the **NOT, or bit flip, operation**. The NOT operation is defined by the logical mapping

$$0 \mapsto \bar{0} = 1, \tag{1.24}$$

and

$$1 \mapsto \bar{1} = 0, \tag{1.25}$$

where the bar notation indicates logical negation. The NOT operation can be hence summarized as

$$x \mapsto \bar{x} = x \oplus 1, \tag{1.26}$$

where $\oplus$ indicates the XOR operation.

The NOT mapping defined by (1.26) can be expressed in terms of the one-hot representation of the state of a cbit by introducing the 2×2 **Pauli X matrix**

$$X = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}. \tag{1.27}$$

In fact, given the input state $|x\rangle$ of a cbit with $x \in \{0, 1\}$ (see Table 1.1), the state of the cbit at the output of a NOT operation (1.24)-(1.25) is given by the one-hot amplitude vector

$$X|x\rangle = |\bar{x}\rangle = |x \oplus 1\rangle. \tag{1.28}$$

The Pauli X matrix (1.27), describing a NOT operation, has the following property

$$XX^\dagger = X^\dagger X = I, \tag{1.29}$$

where I denotes the 2×2 identity matrix

$$I = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}. \tag{1.30}$$

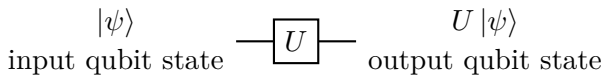


Figure 1.3: The state of a qubit evolves in a closed system according to the product of the input state $|\psi\rangle$ by a unitary matrix U, also known as a single-qubit quantum gate.

The equalities in (1.29) are the defining properties of the class of unitary matrices.

More broadly, any reversible linear transformations mapping a qubit state into a qubit state is described by a 2×2 **unitary matrix** U; and, conversely, any unitary matrix U defines a linear reversible transformation between quantum states. Generalizing (1.29), a unitary matrix U satisfies the equalities

$$UU^\dagger = U^\dagger U = I. \tag{1.31}$$

Hence, the inverse of a unitary matrix equals its Hermitian transpose, i.e., we have $U^{-1} = U^\dagger$. A unitary matrix maps a qubit state into a qubit state, since it conserves the norm of the input vector, i.e.,

$$||U|\psi\rangle||_2^2 = \langle\psi|U^\dagger U|\psi\rangle = |||\psi\rangle||_2^2 = 1, \tag{1.32}$$

where we have used (1.31).

To summarize, as illustrated in Fig. 1.3, in a closed system, a qubit in state $|\psi\rangle$ evolves to a state

$$|\psi'\rangle = U|\psi\rangle \tag{1.33}$$

for some unitary matrix U. This transformation is linear and reversible. In fact, by (1.31), one can return the qubit to the initial state $|\psi\rangle$ by applying the transformation $U^\dagger$ (also unitary by (1.31)), i.e.,

$$|\psi\rangle = U^\dagger|\psi'\rangle. \tag{1.34}$$

An example of a unitary transformation is given by the NOT, or Pauli X, matrix (1.27), which is typically depicted in one of the two ways shown in Fig. 1.4.

1.4.2 Quantum Gates

By the discussion so far in this subsection, any unitary matrix U is in principle physically realizable as the evolution of a closed quantum

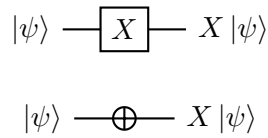


Figure 1.4: Two equivalent representations of a Pauli X, or NOT, gate.

system. A unitary matrix operating on a single qubit is referred to as a **single-qubit quantum gate** in the context of quantum computing.

In practice, as illustrated in Fig. 1.5, a transformation U of a qubit in a quantum computer is typically implemented via a cascade of basic single-qubit quantum gates selected from a library of transformations available in the given quantum system. This cascade can be expressed mathematically as the product

$$U = U_K \cdot U_{K-1} \cdots U_1, \tag{1.35}$$

where the 2×2 unitary matrices U_k with $k \in \{1, 2, ..., K\}$ represent the operation of basic quantum gates. Note that the product of unitary matrices is also unitary (as it can be checked by using (1.31)).

Accordingly, as in Fig. 1.5, the evolution of a qubit in a closed quantum system can be generally described by a **quantum circuit** in which a wire represents a qubit, and multiple quantum gates are applied in the order from left to right. Note that the order in which the quantum gates are applied to the input state is the inverse of the order in which the corresponding matrices appear in the product (1.35) when read from left to right.

Examples of basic single-qubit quantum gates implemented in standard quantum computers are given in Table 1.2. These include the four **Pauli matrices, or Pauli operators**, namely I (the identity matrix), X, Y, and Z; the **Hadamard gate** H, and the **Pauli Y-rotation** $R_Y(\theta)$. The Pauli matrices are related by the **cyclic product** properties $XY = iZ$, $YZ = iX$, and $ZX = iY$, where i is the complex unit.

In the next two subsections, we describe three useful characterizations of unitary matrices and hence of quantum gates.

name	operator
identity	$I = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$
Pauli X	$X = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$
Pauli Z	$Z = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$
Pauli Y	$Y = iXZ = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -i \\ i & 0 \end{bmatrix}$
Hadamard	$H = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 \end{bmatrix} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(X + Z)$
Pauli Y-rotation	$R_Y(\theta) = \begin{bmatrix} \cos(\theta/2) & -\sin(\theta/2) \\ \sin(\theta/2) & \cos(\theta/2) \end{bmatrix}$

Table 1.2: Examples of notable single qubit-quantum gates.

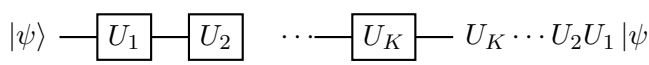


Figure 1.5: Example of quantum circuit describing the evolution of the state of a qubit in a closed system as a cascade of single-qubit quantum gates implementing unitary matrices U_1,..., and U_K.

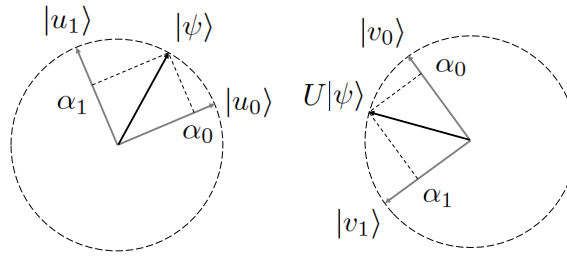


Figure 1.6: A geometric illustration of the operation of a unitary matrix as the change-of-basis transformation (1.36).

1.4.3 Quantum Gates as Change-of-Basis Transformations

Any unitary matrix operating on a qubit can be expressed as

$$U = |v_0\rangle\langle u_0| + |v_1\rangle\langle u_1|, \tag{1.36}$$

where $\{|v_0\rangle, |v_1\rangle\}$ and $\{|u_0\rangle, |u_1\rangle\}$ are two orthonormal bases of the two-dimensional Hilbert space. By (1.36), we can interpret a unitary operator as mapping each vector $|u_x\rangle$ from one orthonormal basis to a vector $|v_x\rangle$ in another orthonormal basis for $x \in \{0, 1\}$. In fact, by (1.36), we have the mapping

$$\begin{aligned} U|u_x\rangle &= (|v_0\rangle\langle u_0| + |v_1\rangle\langle u_1|)|u_x\rangle \\ &= |v_0\rangle\langle u_0|u_x\rangle + |v_1\rangle\langle u_1|u_x\rangle \\ &= |v_x\rangle \end{aligned} \tag{1.37}$$

for $x \in \{0, 1\}$. Therefore, a unitary matrix (1.36) applies a **change of basis** from basis $\{|u_0\rangle, |u_1\rangle\}$ to basis $\{|v_0\rangle, |v_1\rangle\}$. A geometric interpretation is provided in Fig. 1.6.

By linearity, once one specifies the operation of a unitary matrix on the two vectors of an orthonormal basis $\{|u_0\rangle, |u_1\rangle\}$, as in (1.36), the output of the matrix-vector multiplication $U|\psi\rangle$ is defined for *any* qubit state $|\psi\rangle$. In fact, as discussed in Sec. 1.3.1, any qubit state $|\psi\rangle$ can be expressed as the superposition $|\psi\rangle = \alpha_0|u_0\rangle + \alpha_1|u_1\rangle$ of the two vectors $|u_0\rangle$ and $|u_1\rangle$. Therefore, we have the equality

$$\begin{aligned} U|\psi\rangle &= \alpha_0 U|u_0\rangle + \alpha_1 U|v_1\rangle \\ &= \alpha_0|v_0\rangle + \alpha_1|v_1\rangle. \end{aligned} \tag{1.38}$$

Table 1.3 reports some examples of single-qubit quantum gates expressed in the form (1.36), which are detailed next.

• **Identity gate**: The identity "gate" maps any quantum state to itself. Therefore, the form (1.36) applies with *any* orthonormal basis $\{|u_x\rangle = |v_x\rangle\}_{x=0}^{1}$, i.e., we have

$$I = |v_0\rangle\langle v_0| + |v_1\rangle\langle v_1|. \tag{1.39}$$

Condition (1.39) is also known as a **resolution of the identity**.

• **Pauli X, or NOT, gate**: The Pauli X, or NOT, gate acts as a **bit flip**, mapping state $|0\rangle$ to $|1\rangle$, and state $|1\rangle$ to $|0\rangle$. By (1.28), the Pauli X gate can be also thought of as a *shift* operator, as it maps each vector $|x\rangle$, with $x \in \{0, 1\}$, to the "shifted" version $|x\rangle \oplus 1$ with "shift" given by 1. Given a qubit state in the superposition (1.14), the effect of the Pauli X gate is to assign amplitude α_0 to the basis vector $|1\rangle$ and the amplitude α_1 to the basis vector $|0\rangle$, i.e.,

$$X(\alpha_0|0\rangle + \alpha_1|1\rangle) = \alpha_0|1\rangle + \alpha_1|0\rangle. \tag{1.40}$$

• **Pauli Z gate**: The Pauli Z gate swaps the amplitudes of the vectors in the diagonal basis $\{|+\rangle, |-\rangle\}$ – an operation known as **phase flip**. The name is a consequence of the fact that the Z operator flips the phase of the amplitude of the $|1\rangle$ vector for an arbitrary input state (1.14), in the sense that we have

$$Z(\alpha_0|0\rangle + \alpha_1|1\rangle) = \alpha_0|0\rangle - \alpha_1|1\rangle. \tag{1.41}$$

• **Hadamard gate**: The Hadamard gate transforms the computational basis into the diagonal basis and back, in the sense we have the equalities

$$H|0\rangle = |+\rangle \text{ and } H|1\rangle = |-\rangle, \tag{1.42}$$

as well as

$$H|+\rangle = |0\rangle \text{ and } H|-\rangle = |1\rangle. \tag{1.43}$$

The Hadamard gate can be thought of as performing a two-dimensional discrete Fourier transform, as well as the corresponding inverse discrete Fourier transform. In this interpretation, the vector $|+\rangle$ represents the zero-frequency signal, and the vector $|-\rangle$ is the maximum-frequency signal.

name	operator
identity	$I = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = \lvert v_0\rangle\langle v_0\rvert + \lvert v_1\rangle\langle v_1\rvert$ for any orth. basis $\{v_x\}_{x=0}^{1}$
Pauli X	$X = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} = \lvert 0\rangle\langle 1\rvert + \lvert 1\rangle\langle 0\rvert$
Pauli Z	$Z = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix} = \lvert +\rangle\langle -\rvert + \lvert -\rangle\langle +\rvert$
Hadamard	$H = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 \end{bmatrix} = \lvert 0\rangle\langle +\rvert + \lvert 1\rangle\langle -\rvert = \lvert +\rangle\langle 0\rvert + \lvert -\rangle\langle 1\rvert$

Table 1.3: Examples of single-qubit quantum gates as change-of-basis transformations defined by the decomposition (1.36).

1.4.4 Quantum Gates as Transformations with Unitary-Magnitude Eigenvalues

To introduce an alternative interpretation of quantum gates, we will need to review first the spectral theorem, which applies to normal matrices. A **normal matrix** A is a square $N \times N$ matrix that satisfies the condition

$$AA^\dagger = A^\dagger A. \tag{1.44}$$

By the **spectral theorem**, any normal matrix can be expressed in terms of its **eigendecomposition**

$$A = \sum_{x=0}^{N-1} \lambda_x |v_x\rangle\langle v_x|, \tag{1.45}$$

where $\{|v_x\rangle\}_{x=0}^{N-1}$ are the eigenvectors, which form an orthonormal basis of the N-dimensional Hilbert space, and $\{\lambda_x\}_{x=0}^{N-1}$ are the corresponding **eigenvalues**, which are generally complex. Using the eigendecomposition (1.45), given a normal matrix A and a scalar function $f(\cdot)$, we define the matrix function

$$f(A) = \sum_{x=0}^{N-1} f(\lambda_x) |v_x\rangle\langle v_x|. \tag{1.46}$$

That is, function $f(A)$ is evaluated by applying the scalar function $f(\cdot)$ separately to each eigenvalue of matrix A.

A unitary matrix U is a normal matrix, since it satisfies the condition (1.31) and hence also the equality (1.44). Therefore, a 2×2 unitary matrix can be expressed in terms of its eigendecomposition (1.45) with $N = 2$ eigenvectors and eigenvalues, i.e., as

$$U = \lambda_0 |v_0\rangle\langle v_0| + \lambda_1 |v_1\rangle\langle v_1|, \tag{1.47}$$

where $\{|v_x\rangle\}_{x=0}^{1}$ is the orthonormal basis of eigenvectors. Furthermore, all the eigenvalues of unitary matrices have absolute value equal to 1, i.e., $|\lambda_x| = 1$ for $x \in \{0, 1\}$. To see this, note that, by (1.47), the condition (1.31) is equivalent to the equality

$$|\lambda_0|^2 |v_0\rangle\langle v_0| + |\lambda_1|^2 |v_1\rangle\langle v_1| = I, \tag{1.48}$$

and we have the resolution-of-identity condition (1.39).

The change-of-basis representation (1.36) describes a unitary matrix as a map from a state in one basis to a state in another basis. In contrast, the eigendecomposition (1.47) identifies states – the eigenvectors $\{|v_x\rangle\}_{x=0}^{1}$ – that are left unchanged by the operator except for a scaling by a complex number with a unitary absolute value, namely the eigenvalue λ_x for state $|v_x\rangle$.

Some examples of single-qubit gates expressed in terms of their eigendecompositions can be found in Table 1.4, where we have defined the **right-left, or circular, orthonormal basis**

$$|R\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|0\rangle + i|1\rangle) \tag{1.49}$$

$$|L\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|0\rangle - i|1\rangle). \tag{1.50}$$

Note that the identity has all eigenvalues equal to 1, while all other Pauli gates – X, Y, and Z – have one eigenvalue equal to 1 and the other equal to -1.

1.4.5 Quantum Gates from Hermitian Generators

As we discuss in this subsection, a unitary matrix – and hence also a quantum gate – can be expressed as an exponential transformation of a

name	operator
identity	$I = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = \lvert v_0\rangle\langle v_0\rvert + \lvert v_1\rangle\langle v_1\rvert$ for any orth. basis $\{v_x\}_{x=0}^{1}$
Pauli X	$X = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} = \lvert +\rangle\langle +\rvert - \lvert -\rangle\langle -\rvert$
Pauli Z	$Z = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix} = \lvert 0\rangle\langle 0\rvert - \lvert 1\rangle\langle 1\rvert$
Pauli Y	$Y = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -i \\ i & 0 \end{bmatrix} = \lvert R\rangle\langle R\rvert - \lvert L\rangle\langle L\rvert$

Table 1.4: Examples of single-qubit quantum gates expressed in terms of their eigendecompositions (1.47) with unitary-magnitude eigenvalues.

generator matrix. In order to explain this characterization of a unitary matrix, we need to introduce the definition of Hermitian matrix.

A 2×2 matrix A is **Hermitian** if it satisfies the property

$$A^\dagger = A. \tag{1.51}$$

Since the equality (1.51) implies (1.44), a Hermitian matrix is normal. Therefore, as a result of the spectral theorem, it has an eigendecomposition (1.45). Furthermore, it can shown using (1.51) that all eigenvalues of a Hermitian matrix are real.

Any unitary matrix U can be expressed in terms of a Hermitian matrix G as

$$U = \exp(-iG). \tag{1.52}$$

The Hermitian matrix G is known as the **generator** – or, in physics, as the **Hamiltonian** – of the unitary U. Recall that a function of a normal matrix is defined as in (1.46).

It can be easily checked that a matrix in the form (1.52) is indeed unitary. In fact, the defining property (1.31) of unitary matrices is verified as

$$U^\dagger U = \exp(iG^\dagger)\exp(-iG) = \exp(iG^\dagger - iG) = I = UU^\dagger, \tag{1.53}$$

where we have used the property (1.51), i.e., the equality $G^\dagger = G$.

As an example of the characterization (1.52), the Pauli Y-rotation matrix $R_Y(\theta)$ in Table 1.2 can be expressed as a function of the Pauli Y matrix as

$$R_Y(\theta) = \exp\left(-i\frac{\theta}{2}Y\right), \tag{1.54}$$

so that the generator matrix is given by $G = (\theta/2)Y$. One can similarly define the **Pauli X-rotation matrix**

$$R_X(\theta) = \exp\left(-i\frac{\theta}{2}X\right), \tag{1.55}$$

as well as the **Pauli Z-rotation matrix**

$$R_Z(\theta) = \exp\left(-i\frac{\theta}{2}Z\right). \tag{1.56}$$

Rotation matrices can be interpreted geometrically by introducing the so-called Bloch sphere (see problems).

1.4.6 Pauli Orthonormal Basis for the Space of Matrices

The Pauli matrices I, X, Y, and Z play a key role in the formalism of quantum theory. One of their useful properties is that they form a basis for the space of 2×2 (bounded) matrices A with arbitrary complex entries. This is in the sense that any such matrix A can be written as a linear combination of the Pauli matrices as

$$A = a_0 I + a_1 X + a_2 Y + a_3 Z, \tag{1.57}$$

where the coefficients of the expansion are computed as

$$a_0 = \frac{1}{2}\mathrm{tr}\,(A)\,, a_1 = \frac{1}{2}\mathrm{tr}\,(AX)\,,\ a_2{=}\frac{1}{2}\mathrm{tr}\,(AY),\ a_3{=}\frac{1}{2}\mathrm{tr}\,(AZ), \tag{1.58}$$

with $\mathrm{tr}(\cdot)$ denoting the trace (i.e., the sum of elements of the diagonal) of the argument matrix. Note that the operation $\mathrm{tr}(AB)$ for two square matrices A and B corresponds to the inner product $a^T b$ between the vectors a and b obtained by stacking the columns of matrices A^T and B, where $(\cdot)^T$ represents the transpose operation.

If $A = U$ is unitary, it can be shown that the vector of coefficients $[a_0, a_1, a_2, a_3]$ in the decomposition (1.57) has unitary norm. Furthermore, the expansion (1.57) can be specialized as

$$U = \exp(i\delta)(\cos(\phi)I + i\sin(\phi)(\lambda_1 X + \lambda_2 Y + \lambda_3 Z)) \tag{1.59}$$

for some angles (δ, ϕ) and some real numbers λ_1, λ_2, and λ_3. For example, the Pauli Y-rotation matrix can be expressed in the form (1.57) as

$$R_Y(\theta) = \cos\left(\frac{\theta}{2}\right) I - i\sin\left(\frac{\theta}{2}\right) Y, \tag{1.60}$$

with the same form applying also to rotations $R_X(\theta)$ and $R_Z(\theta)$ by replacing matrix Y with X and Z, respectively.

If A is Hermitian, all coefficients $a_{0,}, a_1, a_2$, and a_3 in the expansion (1.57) are real. Therefore, by the characterization (1.52), we can write an arbitrary unitary matrix as

$$U = \exp(-i(a_0 I + a_1 X + a_2 Y + a_3 Z)), \tag{1.61}$$

for real coefficients a_0, a_1, a_2 and a_3. For example, the Pauli Y-rotation matrix can be expressed in the form (1.61) with $a_0 = a_1 = a_3 = 0$ and $a_2 = \theta/2$; and similar characterizations apply to the Pauli X- and Z-rotations.

1.5 Amplitude Diagrams

In a quantum circuit diagram, such as that in Fig. 1.5, a qubit is represented by a wire, and quantum gates are indicated as input-output blocks operating on the qubit with time flowing from left to right. Note that the quantum gates are applied **in place**, in the sense that the physical quantum qubit is the same throughout the computation, while its state varies over time. An alternative representation of the operation of a quantum circuit is provided by an **amplitude diagram**. Amplitude diagrams offer a more detailed description of a unitary by depicting the evolution of the two complex amplitudes defining the qubit state.

To elaborate, let us fix an orthonormal basis. An amplitude diagram contains two wires, one for each of the two amplitudes associated to

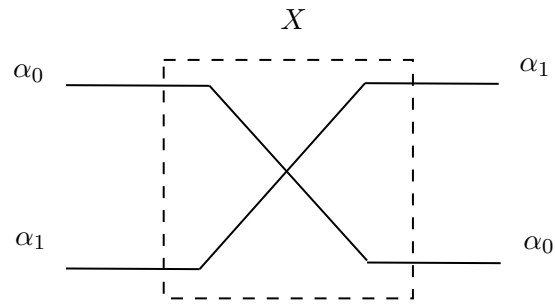


Figure 1.7: Amplitude diagram describing the operation of a Pauli X gate in the computational basis.

either basis vector. Adopting the computational basis $|0\rangle$ and $|1\rangle$, each wires reports the evolution of the value of one of the two amplitudes α_0 and α_1 in the qubit state (1.14).

As an example, Fig. 1.7 shows the description of a Pauli X gate via an amplitude diagram in the computational basis. As clearly illustrated by the amplitude diagram, the X gate swaps the amplitudes associated to the two vectors $|0\rangle$ and $|1\rangle$ in the computational basis (see Sec. 1.4.3). Amplitude diagrams will be used in the next section in order to illustrate the uniquely quantum phenomenon of interference.

1.6 Interference

The key difference between the behavior of a qubit and that of a random cbit is the phenomenon of **interference**. As the state of a qubit evolves over time, the amplitudes α_0 and α_1 corresponding to the two computational basis state $|0\rangle$ and $|1\rangle$ can combine and "interfere" in ways that produce measurement outputs that cannot be described in terms of the evolution of a random cbit. In particular, as we will discuss in this section, it is even possible that the two amplitudes cancel each other out, creating **destructive interference**.

As we detailed in Sec. 1.3.3, if we directly measure a state $|\psi\rangle$ in superposition, it behaves in a manner akin to (the square root of) a probability vector. As an example, as seen in the top part of Fig. 1.8, if we directly measure a qubit in state $|+\rangle = 1/\sqrt{2}(|0\rangle + |1\rangle)$, we obtain

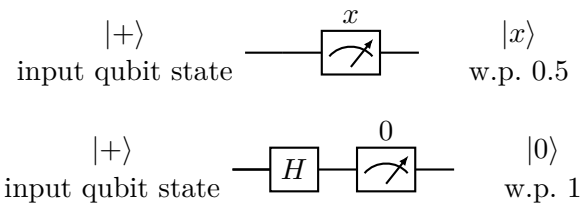


Figure 1.8: (top) Measuring directly qubit in the superposition state $|+\rangle$ yields measurement outputs 0 or 1 with equal probability; (bottom) Measuring a qubit in state $|+\rangle$ after the application of a Hadamard gate yields a measurement output equal to 1 with probability 1 owing to the phenomenon of interference.

as measurement output 0 or 1 with equal probability $(1/\sqrt{2})^2 = 1/2$. However, as anticipated in Sec. 1.3.3, this cannot be interpreted as indicating that, unbeknownst to us, prior to the measurement, the qubit is in *either* state $|0\rangle$ *or* state $|1\rangle$. This situation would describe the state of a random cbit, for which randomness is of **epistemic** nature, that is, related to lack of knowledge on the part of the observer making a measurement. For a qubit, uncertainty is of an inherently different nature; and, as we will illustrate next with an example, one needs to describe the state of the qubit as a "real" superposition of *both* states $|0\rangle$ *and* state $|1\rangle$.

For reference, let us consider first the situation in which we model (incorrectly) the input state as being equal to to $|0\rangle$ with probability $1/2$ and $|1\rangle$ with probability $1/2$. This would imply that the qubit is equivalent to a random cbit, taking either possible state with equal probability. In this case, after the Hadamard gate in the bottom part of Fig. 1.8, by (1.42), the qubit would be in state $H|0\rangle = |+\rangle$ with probability $1/2$, and in state $H|1\rangle = |-\rangle$ with probability $1/2$. Measuring each diagonal state $|+\rangle$ and $|-\rangle$ produces output 0 or 1 with equal probability. Therefore, by the law of total probability, the standard measurement in Fig. 1.8 outputs 0 with probability $1/2 \cdot 1/2 + 1/2 \cdot 1/2 = 1/2$, and 1 with probability $1/2$. We will see next that the superposition of states $|0\rangle$ and $|1\rangle$ prepared by the first Hadamard gate in Fig. 1.8 produces very different measurement outputs.

To elaborate, let us apply the Hadamard gate to the input superpo-

sition state $|+\rangle$. This gives the qubit state

$$H\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|0\rangle+|1\rangle)\right)=\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(H|0\rangle+H|1\rangle)$$
$$=\frac{1}{2}(|0\rangle+|1\rangle+|0\rangle-|1\rangle)=|0\rangle, \tag{1.62}$$

where we have used again (1.42). Therefore, by the Born rule, measuring the output state produces output 0 with probability 1. The calculation (1.62) can be also carried out directly in terms of amplitude vectors by expressing the Hadamard gate as in Table 1.2. With this formalism, the output state can be computed as

$$\underbrace{\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\begin{bmatrix}1 & 1\\ 1 & -1\end{bmatrix}}_{H}\underbrace{\begin{bmatrix}\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\\ \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\end{bmatrix}}_{|+\rangle}=\underbrace{\begin{bmatrix}1\\ 0\end{bmatrix}}_{|0\rangle}, \tag{1.63}$$

confirming (1.62).

Graphically, the amplitude vector calculation in (1.63) can be represented using the amplitude diagram shown in Fig. 1.9. The amplitude diagram highlights the fact that the amplitudes of states $|0\rangle$ and $|1\rangle$ interfere with each other as the system evolves through the Hadamard gate, reinforcing the amplitude of state $|0\rangle$ and nulling the amplitude of state $|1\rangle$ after the second Hadamard gate.

Overall, having observed the significant difference between the output produced by random cbit state and the actual qubit state, we can conclude that a qubit in a superposition state cannot be interpreted as being in either state – it is, in some precise sense, in both states.

1.7 Conclusions

This chapter has introduced the qubit as the basic unit of quantum information and computing. To this end, we have built on a, rather limited, analogy with a random cbit. A qubit can evolve in one of two ways: through multiplication via a unitary transform – i.e., through a linear reversible transformation – or through a measurement. When directly measured, a qubit can be equivalently described as being in a state of epistemic uncertainty. Accordingly, each of the two orthogonal

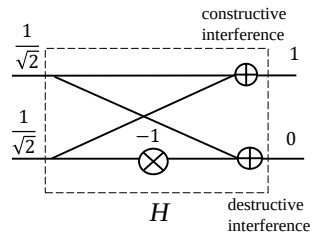


Figure 1.9: Amplitude diagram illustrating the effect of interference for the quantum circuit in the bottom part of Fig. 1.8.

states of the qubit is observed as the post-measurement state with a probability equal to the absolute value squared of the corresponding amplitude. However, if a qubit first evolves through a unitary transformation and is only then measured, describing the distribution of the measurement outputs requires modelling the state of the qubit as a "true" superposition of the two orthogonal states. In the next chapter, we will extend the formalism and concepts introduced here to the case of multiple qubits.

1.8 Recommended Resources

The material covered in this chapter is standard, and recommended references for further reading include [1], which makes particularly clear the relationship between cbits and qubits ("Qbits"); and [2], which provides a "ket-free" presentation, highlighting the role of linear algebra and offering useful discussions via amplitude diagrams. An extensive and endlessly useful reference is the classical book [3].

1.9 Problems

1. Prove the equalities $YX = -iZ$, $ZY = -iX$, and $XZ = -iY$.

2. Describe the output of a standard measurement when a qubit in state $|0\rangle$ is first passed through a Pauli Y-rotation $R_Y(\theta)$ as a function of the angle θ. Explain your results using amplitude-based diagrams.

3. Explain the two-slit experiment (see recommended resources) in terms of interference.

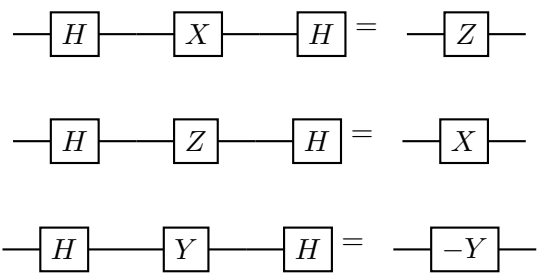
4. Argue that the global phase of the two-dimensional vector describing a qubit state is not relevant to describe the outcomes of measurements of the qubit.

5. Using the Bloch sphere (see recommended references), describe the Pauli rotations $R_X(\theta)$ and $R_Z(\theta)$ geometrically, and argue that any unitary transformation can be written as the product

$$\exp(i\alpha)R_Z(\theta_1)R_X(\theta_2)R_Z(\theta_3) \tag{1.64}$$

for suitable angles α, θ_1, θ_2, and θ_3. Following your argument, demonstrate that any pair of Pauli rotations can be combine to produce an arbitrary unitary transformation.

6. Show the following equivalence relations



2

Classical Bits (Cbits) and Quantum Bits (Qubits)

2.1 Introduction

In this chapter, we will describe quantum systems with more than one qubit, introducing the formalism used to model states, transformations, and measurements. A key new concept arising from the analysis of multiple-qubit systems is that of entanglement – a uniquely quantum form of statistical dependence.

2.2 Multiple Random Classical Bits

As in the previous chapter, we start by discussing a formalism for the description of multiple random cbits, which will then be used as a starting point for the definition of a multi-qubit state.

2.2.1 Classical Bits as Integers and as One-Hot Vectors

To start, let us consider a system with $n = 3$ cbits. As illustrated in Table 2.1, we can represent the state of a three-cbit system in one of the following ways:

- **as a string of $n = 3$ bits**

$$x_0, x_1, x_2, \tag{2.1}$$

with each k-th bit denoted as $x_k \in \{0, 1\}$ for $k \in \{0, 1, 2\}$;

- **as the integer $x \in \{0, 1, ..., 7\}$** given as

$$x = 2^2 x_0 + 2x_1 + x_2, \tag{2.2}$$

which converts the bit string (2.1) to one of $N = 8$ integers by considering the cbits in the string (2.1) as listed from the most significant to the least significant;

- **as a one-hot amplitude vector**, which is a 3×1 vector with all zero elements except for a "1" digit in the position indexed by integer x in (2.2) when counting from zero and starting from the top of the vector.

The one-hot amplitude vector representation generalizes the formalism introduced in Sec. 1.2.1 for single qubits. As discussed in Sec. 1.2.2, one-hot amplitude vectors can be represented using Dirac's ket notation, which applies to column vectors with unitary norm. Accordingly, as illustrated in Table 2.1, we denote the one-hot vector representing bit string (2.1), or equivalently integer (2.2), as $|x_0 x_1 x_2\rangle$, or as $|x\rangle_3$. The subscript in the ket $|x\rangle_3$ indicates the number of cbits, here $n = 3$, in order to avoid ambiguities, and it will be omitted when no ambiguity can arise. We will see later in the monograph that the subscript in a ket can also be used also for other purposes such as to identify a subsystem of a larger system.

Generalizing the example, a string of n cbits will be denoted throughout the text in one of the following ways:

- **as a string of n bits**

$$x_0, x_1, ..., x_{n-1}, \tag{2.3}$$

with each k-th bit denoted as $x_k \in \{0, 1\}$ for $k \in \{0, 1, ..., n-1\}$;

integer x	cbits	one-hot amplitude vector $\|x\rangle_n$
0	000	$\|0\rangle_3 = \|000\rangle = [1,0,0,0,0,0,0,0]^\dagger$
1	001	$\|1\rangle_3 = \|001\rangle = [0,1,0,0,0,0,0,0]^\dagger$
2	010	$\|2\rangle_3 = \|010\rangle = [0,0,1,0,0,0,0,0]^\dagger$
3	011	$\|3\rangle_3 = \|011\rangle = [0,0,0,1,0,0,0,0]^\dagger$
4	100	$\|4\rangle_3 = \|100\rangle = [0,0,0,0,1,0,0,0]^\dagger$
5	101	$\|5\rangle_3 = \|101\rangle = [0,0,0,0,0,1,0,0]^\dagger$
6	110	$\|6\rangle_3 = \|110\rangle = [0,0,0,0,0,0,1,0]^\dagger$
7	111	$\|7\rangle_3 = \|111\rangle = [0,0,0,0,0,0,0,1]^\dagger$

Table 2.1: List of cbit strings of $n = 3$ cbits with associated integer representation and one-hot amplitude vector.

- **as the integer** $x \in \{0, 1, ..., 2^n - 1\}$ given as

$$x = \sum_{j=0}^{n-1} 2^{n-j-1} \cdot x_j, \tag{2.4}$$

  which converts the bit string to one of $N = 2^n$ integers in the set $\{0, 1, ..., 2^n - 1\}$ by considering the cbits in the string (2.3) as listed from most significant to least significant;

- **as a one-hot amplitude vector** $|x_0 x_1 \cdots x_{n-1}\rangle$, or equivalently $|x\rangle_n$, which is an $2^n \times 1$ vector with all zero elements except for a 1 digit in the position indexed by integer x in (2.4) when counting from zero and starting from the top of the vector.

Representing classical information encoded by n cbits requires n binary physical systems, such as on-off switches. The one-hot amplitude representation introduced in this subsection is exponentially less efficient, since it requires vectors of dimension $N = 2^n$. For example, $n = 10$ cbits are encoded into one-hot amplitude vectors of size $N = 1024$; and $n = 300$ cbits require amplitude vectors of size $N \simeq 10^{100}$ – which is larger than the number of atoms in the universe.

2.2.2 Random Cbits and Probability Vectors

Despite their inefficiency, one-hot vectors are routinely used in machine learning when dealing with discrete random variables. In fact, the probability distribution of a random n-cbit string is described by the $2^n \times 1$ probability vector

$$p = \begin{bmatrix} p_0 \\ p_1 \\ \vdots \\ p_{2^n-1} \end{bmatrix}, \tag{2.5}$$

with $p_x \geq 0$ being the probability of the cbit string being equal to $x \in \{0, 1, ..., 2^n - 1\}$. Note again that we refer to a cbit string and to the corresponding integer representation interchangeably. The probability vector (2.5) must satisfy the condition

$$\sum_{x=0}^{2^n-1} p_x = 1. \tag{2.6}$$

2.2.3 From Individual Cbits to Multiple Cbits via the Kronecker Product

As we know from the previous chapter, the state of a single (deterministic) cbit can be represented by a 2×1 one-hot amplitude vector, which may take values

$$|0\rangle = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \text{ or } |1\rangle = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}. \tag{2.7}$$

Furthermore, as introduced in the last subsection, a system of n classical cbits defined by integer $x \in \{0, 1, ..., 2^n - 1\}$ is represented by a $2^n \times 1$ one-hot amplitude vector $|x\rangle_n$. Can we obtain the one-hot amplitude vector $|x\rangle_n$ for the overall system from the one-hot amplitude vectors $|x_k\rangle$, with $x_k \in \{0, 1\}$, for the individual cbits $k \in \{0, 1, ..., n - 1\}$? We will see in this subsection that the answer to this question is affirmative, and that the tool that enables this operation is the Kronecker product.

Given an $m \times 1$ vector

$$a = \begin{bmatrix} a_1 \\ a_2 \\ \vdots \\ a_m \end{bmatrix} \tag{2.8}$$

and a $k \times 1$ vector b, the **Kronecker product** $a \otimes b$ produces the $mk \times 1$ vector

$$a \otimes b = \begin{bmatrix} a_1 b \\ a_2 b \\ \vdots \\ a_m b \end{bmatrix}, \tag{2.9}$$

where the products $a_k b$ are evaluated element-wise on the entries of vector b for $k \in \{1, 2, ..., m\}$.

Using this definition, the $2^n \times 1$ amplitude vector $|x\rangle_n$ for a system of n cbits can be computed from the two-dimensional amplitude vectors $|x_0\rangle, |x_1\rangle, \ldots, |x_{n-1}\rangle$ of the individual cbits via the n-fold Kronecker product

$$|x\rangle_n = |x_0 x_1 ... x_{n-1}\rangle = |x_0\rangle \otimes |x_1\rangle \otimes \cdots \otimes |x_{n-1}\rangle. \tag{2.10}$$

To illustrate this operation, let us consider a system with $n = 3$ cbits with values $x_0 = 1$, $x_1 = 1$, and $x_2 = 0$. The amplitude vector describing the state of the overall system is given by

$$|110\rangle = |6\rangle_3 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}. \tag{2.11}$$

This vector can be expressed via the Kronecker product in (2.10) as

$$\begin{aligned}
&\begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{0} \\ \mathbf{1} \end{bmatrix} \otimes \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \otimes \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \\
&= \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{0} \cdot 0 \\ \mathbf{0} \cdot 1 \\ \mathbf{1} \cdot 0 \\ \mathbf{1} \cdot 1 \end{bmatrix} \otimes \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \\
&= \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{0} \\ \mathbf{0} \\ \mathbf{0} \\ \mathbf{1} \end{bmatrix} \otimes \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{0} \cdot 1 \\ \mathbf{0} \cdot 0 \\ \mathbf{0} \cdot 1 \\ \mathbf{0} \cdot 0 \\ \mathbf{0} \cdot 1 \\ \mathbf{0} \cdot 0 \\ \mathbf{1} \cdot 1 \\ \mathbf{1} \cdot 0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix},
\end{aligned} \tag{2.12}$$

where the bold font has been introduced in order to facilitate the interpretation of the operations at hand, and we have used the associative property of the Kronecker product.

2.2.4 From Individual Random Cbits to Multiple Random Cbits?

In this subsection, we address a question analogous to that considered in the previous subsection moving from deterministic to random cbits. To formulate the question, for n random cbits, suppose that we know the 2×1 (marginal) probability vectors for all the constituent n cbits. Can we obtain from these n vectors the $2^n \times 1$ probability vector (2.5) of the overall system? As we review in this subsection, the answer is negative, unless the random cbits are statistically independent.

To elaborate, let us consider the case with $n = 2$ random cbits. The individual probability vectors for the two cbits can be written as

$$p^A = \begin{bmatrix} p_0^A \\ p_1^A \end{bmatrix} \text{ and } p^B = \begin{bmatrix} p_0^B \\ p_1^B \end{bmatrix} \tag{2.13}$$

where the superscript A and B identifies the two cbits. In (2.13), the element p_x^A is the marginal probability for the first random cbit to take

value $x \in \{0, 1\}$, and an analogous definition applies for p_x^B. If the cbits are **statistically independent**, we can write the probability vector of the system of two random cbits as

$$p = \begin{bmatrix} p_0^A \\ p_1^A \end{bmatrix} \otimes \begin{bmatrix} p_0^B \\ p_1^B \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} p_0^A p_0^B \\ p_0^A p_1^B \\ p_1^A p_0^B \\ p_1^A p_1^B \end{bmatrix}. \tag{2.14}$$

This is because the joint probability of independent random variables is the product of the individual marginal distributions.

For two **statistically dependent** – or, somewhat less formally, **correlated** – random cbits, the probability vector cannot be expressed in terms of the individual marginal probability vectors, i.e., we have the inequality

$$p = \begin{bmatrix} p_{00} \\ p_{01} \\ p_{10} \\ p_{11} \end{bmatrix} \neq \begin{bmatrix} p_0^A p_0^B \\ p_0^A p_1^B \\ p_1^A p_0^B \\ p_1^A p_1^B \end{bmatrix}, \tag{2.15}$$

where p_{xy} is the joint probability that the first cbit takes value $x \in \{0, 1\}$ and the second cbit takes value $y \in \{0, 1\}$. Therefore, unless the random cbits are independent, the probability vectors for the individual random cbits only provide information about the corresponding marginal distributions, from which one cannot recover the joint distribution.

2.2.5 Probability Vectors as "Superpositions" of Basis States

As we have seen in Sec. 1.2.3, the probability vector for a single random cbit can be written as

$$p = \begin{bmatrix} p_0 \\ p_1 \end{bmatrix} = p_0|0\rangle + p_1|1\rangle, \tag{2.16}$$

with $p_0 + p_1 = 1$. In words, a probability vector p can be thought of as a **"superposition"** of the computational basis vectors $|0\rangle$ and $|1\rangle$. In this subsection, we generalize this relationship to any number n of (jointly distributed) random cbits.

To this end, we start by defining the **computational basis** of the 2^n-dimensional linear vector space as the set of 2^n one-hot amplitude

vectors

$$|x\rangle = |x_0, x_1, \cdots, x_{n-1}\rangle \tag{2.17}$$

for $x \in \{0, 1, ..., 2^n - 1\}$ and $x_k \in \{0, 1\}$ with $k \in \{0, 1, ..., n - 1\}$. Note that we have dropped the subscript n in (2.10) in order to simplify the notation. The vectors

$$\{|x\rangle\}_{x=0}^{2^n-1} = \{|0\rangle, |1\rangle, ..., |2^{n-1}\rangle\} \tag{2.18}$$

can be readily proved to be mutually orthogonal, i.e., we have

$$\langle x|x'\rangle = 0 \text{ if } x' \neq x \tag{2.19}$$

and to have unitary norm, i.e., $\langle x|x\rangle = 1$. Therefore, they form an orthonormal basis for the 2^n-dimensional linear vector space, which is known as the computational basis.

Therefore, the 2^n-dimensional probability vector p for a system of n cbits, i.e., (2.5), can be written as

$$p = \begin{bmatrix} p_0 \\ p_1 \\ \vdots \\ p_{2^n-1} \end{bmatrix} = \sum_{x=0}^{2^n-1} p_x |x\rangle, \tag{2.20}$$

with $\sum_{x=0}^{2^n-1} p_x = 1$. Accordingly, probability vector p is the **"superposition"** of the 2^n vectors in the computational basis (2.18), with each vector $|x\rangle$ weighted by the corresponding probability p_x.

2.3 Multiple Qubits

In this section, we describe systems consisting of multiple qubits.

2.3.1 Qubits as Amplitude Vectors

In a manner that is somewhat analogous to the state of a set of n random cbits, described by the probability vector p in (2.20), the state of an n-qubit system is specified by the $2^n \times 1$ vector

$$|\psi\rangle = \begin{bmatrix} \alpha_0 \\ \alpha_1 \\ \vdots \\ \alpha_{2^n-1} \end{bmatrix} = \sum_{x=0}^{2^n-1} \alpha_x |x\rangle, \tag{2.21}$$

with amplitudes $\{\alpha_x\}_{x=0}^{2^n-1}$ satisfying the equality

$$\sum_{x=0}^{2^n-1} |\alpha_x|^2 = 1. \tag{2.22}$$

The quantum state vector $|\psi\rangle$ is hence an element of a 2^n-dimensional *complex* linear vector space space, which is referred to as the 2^n-dimensional **Hilbert space**. Furthermore, by (2.21), we say that the state $|\psi\rangle$ is a **superposition** of the $N = 2^n$ vectors in the computational basis $\{|x\rangle\}_{x=0}^{2^n-1}$ with respective amplitudes $\{\alpha_x\}_{x=0}^{2^n-1}$.

Generalizing the discussion concerning single qubits in Sec. 1.3.1, unlike the probability vector p, the quantum state (2.21) has complex entries α_0 and α_1, and it satisfies the defining property of having *unitary norm* by (2.22) (which is different from (2.6)). Moreover, while being distinct from the state of n random cbit, the quantum state (2.21) recovers as special cases the 2^n possible states of n deterministic cbits when expressed as one-hot amplitude vectors. In fact, setting the amplitudes as $\alpha_x = 1$ (and hence $\alpha'_x = 0$ for $x' \neq x$) recovers the deterministic n-cbit state $|x\rangle$. Therefore, a system of n qubits that can only assume the states $\{|x\rangle\}_{x=0}^{2^n-1}$ in the computational basis is equivalent to n deterministic cbits.

As an example for $n = 2$, we can write the $N = 2^2 = 4$-dimensional state vector in the following equivalent ways

$$\begin{aligned}
|\psi\rangle &= \begin{bmatrix} \alpha_0 \\ \alpha_1 \\ \alpha_2 \\ \alpha_3 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \alpha_{00} \\ \alpha_{01} \\ \alpha_{10} \\ \alpha_{11} \end{bmatrix} \\
&= \alpha_0 \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} + \alpha_1 \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} + \alpha_2 \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} + \alpha_3 \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \\
&= \alpha_0|0\rangle + \alpha_1|1\rangle + \alpha_2|2\rangle + \alpha_3|3\rangle \\
&= \alpha_{00}|00\rangle + \alpha_{01}|01\rangle + \alpha_{10}|10\rangle + \alpha_{11}|11\rangle,
\end{aligned} \tag{2.23}$$

where we have indexed the vectors in the computational basis using either the integer or binary string representations.

As highlighted in (2.23), the amplitudes defining quantum state (2.21) can be indexed by an integer $x \in \{0, 1, ..., 2^n - 1\}$ or, equivalently, by an n-cbit string. The latter notation formalizes a quantum state as a **tensor**. A tensor of order n is a multi-dimensional "table" whose elements are identified by an n-dimensional vector, here of binary numbers. For the quantum state (2.21), the tensor is defined by a table with entries $\alpha_{x_0,x_1,...,x_{n-1}}$, where each k-th dimension is indexed by cbit $x_k \in \{0, 1\}$.

The exponential size of the quantum state vector (2.21) makes it practically impossible, in general, to use a classical computer to simulate the operation of quantum systems with as low as $n = 50$ qubits. In fact, representing a quantum state of 50 qubits requires around $2^{50} \gtrsim 10^{15}$ bytes to fit into the main memory, which is hard even for the largest supercomputers available today (see also Sec. 2.2.1).

Being a 2^n-dimensional vector, the quantum state (2.21) can be expressed as a linear combination of the vectors $\{|v_x\rangle\}_{x\in\{0,1,...,2^n-1\}}$ forming *any* orthonormal basis of the 2^n-dimensional Hilbert space. As an important example, for $n = 2$ qubits, an orthonormal basis for the $2^2 = 4$-dimensional Hilbert space is given by the so-called **Bell basis** consisting of the four **Bell states**

$$|\Phi^+\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|00\rangle + |11\rangle) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\,[1, 0, 0, 1]^\dagger \tag{2.24}$$

$$|\Psi^+\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|01\rangle + |10\rangle) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\,[0, 1, 1, 0]^\dagger \tag{2.25}$$

$$|\Phi^-\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|00\rangle - |11\rangle) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\,[1, 0, 0, -1]^\dagger \tag{2.26}$$

$$|\Psi^-\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|01\rangle - |10\rangle) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\,[0, 1, -1, 0]^\dagger\,. \tag{2.27}$$

As we will see throughout this text, Bell states play an important role in quantum computing as building blocks of routines and protocols. It is useful to know that we can also write the Bell basis in terms of the

diagonal basis (see Sec. 1.3.1) as

$$|\Phi^+\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|++\rangle + |--\rangle) \tag{2.28}$$

$$|\Psi^+\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|++\rangle - |--\rangle) \tag{2.29}$$

$$|\Phi^-\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|-+\rangle + |+-\rangle) \tag{2.30}$$

$$|\Psi^-\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|-+\rangle - |+-\rangle). \tag{2.31}$$

2.3.2 Measuring Qubits: von Neumann Measurements

A **von Neumann measurement in the computational basis**, or **standard measurement** for short, takes as input n qubits in an arbitrary state $|\psi\rangle$ as in (2.21), and it produces n cbits as the measurement's output, while leaving the qubits in a generally different state from the original state $|\psi\rangle$. Specifically, a standard measurement satisfies the following two properties, which are direct extensions of the properties reviewed in Sec. 1.3.2 for single-qubit measurements (i.e., for $n = 1$):

- **Born's rule**: The probability of observing the n-cbit string $x \in \{0,1\}^n$ is

$$\begin{aligned}\Pr[\text{measurement output equals } x \in \{0,1\}^n] &= |\alpha_x|^2 \\ &= |\langle x|\psi\rangle|^2; \end{aligned} \tag{2.32}$$

- **"Collapse" of the state**: If the measured n-cbit string is x, the **post-measurement state** of the qubits is $|x\rangle$.

Generalizing the discussion in Sec. 1.3.2, one can check that a system of n qubits that can only take states $|x\rangle$ in the computational basis behaves like a deterministic cbits. This is in the sense that, by Born's rule, measuring a qubit in state $|x\rangle$, for $x \in \{0,1,...,2^n-1\}$, returns output x with probability 1, while leaving the qubits' state unchanged.

As we will further clarify in the next chapter, a standard measurement on n qubits can be implemented by applying a standard measurement separately to each individual qubit. This is illustrated

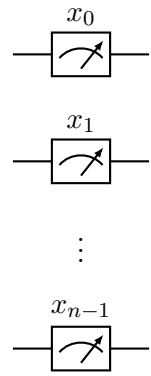


Figure 2.1: A standard measurement on n qubits can be implemented as n separate standard measurements on the individual qubits. Each k-th cbit x_k of the overall n-cbit output of the measurement is produced by measuring the k-th qubit.

in Fig. 2.1, in which a separate "meter" is applied to each qubit. Accordingly, each individual cbit x_k defining the measurement output $x_0, x_1, ..., x_{n-1}$ corresponding to an integer $x \in \{0, 1, ..., 2^n - 1\}$ is produced by measuring the k-th qubit. Furthermore, we will see in the next chapter that such per-qubit measurements can be carried out in any order on the qubit (including simultaneously) without changing the distribution of the measurement outputs given by Born's rule.

2.4 Closed Quantum Systems, Unitary Transformations, and Parallel Single-Qubit Gates

Generalizing the discussion in Sec. 1.4.1, when not measured, a system of n qubits in state $|\psi\rangle$ evolves according to a linear reversible transformation, which is defined by a $2^n \times 2^n$ unitary matrix U. Accordingly, in a closed system, a quantum input state $|\psi\rangle$ evolves into an output state $U|\psi\rangle$. A unitary matrix satisfies the equalities (1.31), i.e., $UU^\dagger = U^\dagger U = I$, where I is an $2^n \times 2^n$ identity matrix.

While in theory every unitary matrix U is physically realizable, in practice, transformations U are described and implemented as a cascade of unitary matrices that apply to small subsets of qubits, typically consisting of only one or two qubits. Using the terminology introduced in Sec. 1.4.2, we refer to unitary matrices applied to m qubits as m-qubit

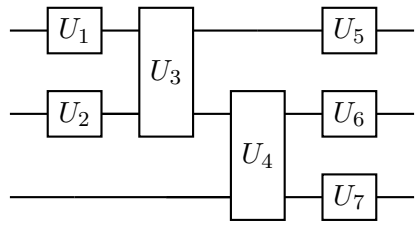


Figure 2.2: A quantum circuit representing the operation of an 8×8 unitary transform on $n = 3$ qubits as a sequence of one- and two-qubit gates (with the former being defined by 2×2 matrices, and the latter by 4×4 matrices).

quantum gates. Existing quantum computers implement a library of *single-qubit* quantum gates and *two-qubit* quantum gates.

The representation of a unitary matrix as a sequence of smaller quantum gates is described by a **quantum circuit**. A quantum circuit contains n wires – one per qubit – and it describes the sequence of unitary matrices applied to the n qubits with time flowing from left to right. An example is shown in Fig. 2.2.

Importantly, the operation of a quantum circuit are applied **in place** in the sense that the quantum gates are applied to a set of n physical qubits whose joint state evolves over time upon the application of the sequence of quantum gates.

It is also emphasized that, while a quantum circuit contains n wires, a full description of the corresponding quantum transformation requires the definition of a $2^n \times 2^n$ unitary matrix U. Formally, quantum circuits can be studied within the formalism of tensor networks (see recommended resources in Sec. 2.12).

We will have more to say about multi-qubit gates in Sec. 2.6. In this section, we consider the simple setting in which the unitary U is composed of separate single-qubit gates applied in **parallel** to the n qubits.

To start, let us generalize the definition of the **Kronecker product**

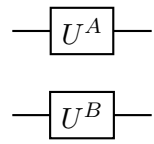


Figure 2.3: A 4×4 unitary matrix obtained as the separate application of 2×2 unitary matrices U^A and U^B to two qubits.

to matrices. Given an $m \times k$ matrix

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \cdots & a_{1k} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & \cdots & a_{2k} \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ a_{m1} & a_{m2} & \cdots & a_{mk} \end{bmatrix} \tag{2.33}$$

and a $l \times r$ matrix B, the Kronecker product produces the $ml \times kr$ matrix

$$A \otimes B = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11}B & a_{12}B & \cdots & a_{1k}B \\ a_{21}B & a_{22}B & \cdots & a_{2k}B \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ a_{m1}B & a_{m2}B & \cdots & a_{mk}B \end{bmatrix}, \tag{2.34}$$

where the product is applied in an element-wise manner to matrix B.

To illustrate the setting of interest in which single-qubit gates are applied in parallel to different qubits, let us consider a two-qubit system, i.e., with $n = 2$. In it, as illustrated in Fig. 2.3, the 2×2 unitary U^A is applied to the first qubit, while the 2×2 unitary U^B is applied to the second qubit. The overall 4×4 unitary U applied to the system of two qubits can be expressed as the Kronecker product

$$U = U^A \otimes U^B. \tag{2.35}$$

In words, the Kronecker product of 2×2 unitaries describes a transformation in which the corresponding single-qubit quantum gates are applied separately to the qubits. A multi-qubit gate that can be described as the Kronecker product of individual qubit gates is referred to as being **separable**.

As an example, the unitary $I \otimes U$, with I being the 2×2 identity matrix, corresponds to a transformation in which no processing is done

on the first qubit and the single-qubit gate U is applied to the second qubit.

To understand the effect of the application of a separable operator, consider a general two-qubit state (2.21), i.e.,

$$|\psi\rangle = \alpha_{00}|00\rangle + \alpha_{01}|01\rangle + \alpha_{10}|10\rangle + \alpha_{11}|11\rangle. \tag{2.36}$$

The output of the circuit in Fig. 2.3 is given by

$$U|\psi\rangle = \alpha_{00}U|00\rangle + \alpha_{01}U|01\rangle + \alpha_{10}U|10\rangle + \alpha_{11}U|11\rangle, \tag{2.37}$$

where we have

$$\begin{aligned}(U^A \otimes U^B)|xy\rangle &= (U^A \otimes U^B)(|x\rangle \otimes |y\rangle) \\ &= U^A|x\rangle \otimes U^B|y\rangle\end{aligned} \tag{2.38}$$

for all $x, y \in \{0, 1\}$. In the first line of (2.38), we have used the key property that the product of two Kronecker products yields another Kronecker product.

The result (2.38) illustrates how a separable gate, defined by a unitary of the form (2.35), applies the individual qubit gates separately to the two qubits. Importantly, the output state of the overall system can be expressed as the Kronecker product of individual qubit states as long as the input state is the Kronecker product of individual qubit states. In contrast, if the input state is not in such a separable form, as in (2.36), the output state (2.37) is also generally not a Kronecker product of individual qubit states. The distinction between separable and more general quantum states is the subject of the next section.

2.5 Entanglement

As for the case of single qubits ($n = 1$) covered in Sec. 1.3.3, the amplitude vector of an n-qubit system has some aspects in common with probability vectors describing the state of n random cbits – including its dimension, 2^n. However, qubits behave in fundamentally different ways as compared to random cbits in terms of their evolution and interactions with other systems. Sec. 1.6 introduced the concept of interference, demonstrating that the behavior exhibited by qubits cannot

be explained by modelling a qubit with a random cbit. In this section, we introduce a new distinguishing feature of quantum systems as compared to classical random systems: entanglement. Entanglement arises in the presence of multiple qubits, and may be thought of as a stronger form of statistical dependence that only applies to quantum systems.

2.5.1 Separable and Entangled States

To start, let us define a set of n qubits as **separable** if the qubits' joint state $|\psi\rangle$, a 2^n-dimensional vector, can be expressed as the Kronecker product of the individual qubit states. For example, for two arbitrary qubit states, $|\psi^A\rangle = \alpha_0^A|0\rangle + \alpha_1^A|1\rangle$ for the first qubit and $|\psi^B\rangle = \alpha_0^B|0\rangle + \alpha_1^B|1\rangle$ for the second, the general form of a separable state is

$$|\psi^A\rangle \otimes |\psi^B\rangle = \begin{bmatrix} \alpha_0^A \cdot \alpha_0^B \\ \alpha_0^A \cdot \alpha_1^B \\ \alpha_1^A \cdot \alpha_0^B \\ \alpha_1^A \cdot \alpha_1^B \end{bmatrix}. \tag{2.39}$$

The definition of separable state should call to mind the definition of independent random cbits given in (2.14). In fact, the two definitions are formally equivalent if one replaces quantum amplitudes with probabilities.

In terms of notation, a separable state in the form $|\psi^A\rangle \otimes |\psi^B\rangle$ can also be written as $|\psi^A, \psi^B\rangle$, dropping the Kronecker operation. Note that this is what we have already done implicitly when writing a vector in the computational basis as in (2.17), in the sense we have the equalities

$$|x\rangle = |x_0, x_1, \cdots, x_{n-1}\rangle = |x_0\rangle \otimes |x_1\rangle \otimes \cdots \otimes |x_{n-1}\rangle. \tag{2.40}$$

As a related matter of notation, we will often drop the comma between the identifiers of the states for separate qubits, that is, we may write $|\psi^A, \psi^B\rangle$ as $|\psi^A\psi^B\rangle$. For example, the computational-basis vector (2.40) may be expressed as $|x_0x_1 \cdots, x_{n-1}\rangle$.

As discussed in Sec. 2.2.4, statistically dependent random cbits are characterized by probability vectors that *cannot* be expressed as the Kronecker product of the (marginal) probability vectors of the individual

random cbits. In a somewhat analogous manner, a set of qubits is said to be **entangled** if its state cannot be written as the Kronecker product of the states of the individual qubits.

We will see in the next subsection that the parallel between dependent random cbits and entangled qubits is purely formal, in the sense that measurement outputs of entangled qubits exhibit statistical behaviors that cannot be explained by means of standard correlations of cbits.

An important example of an entangled state for $n = 2$ qubits is given by the Bell state, also known as **Bell pair** (see Sec. 2.3.1)

$$|\Phi^+\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|00\rangle + |11\rangle) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}. \tag{2.41}$$

In fact, the state (2.41) cannot be written as the Kronecker product of two individual qubit states. To see this, note that there is no choice for the two individual qubit states $|\psi^A\rangle$ and $|\psi^B\rangle$, which makes (2.39) equal to the Bell state (2.41).

When considering $n \geq 3$ qubits, the definition of entangled states given here allows for different degrees of entanglement across the qubits. For example, according to this definition, three entangled qubits could be only **partially entangled** as in a state of the form $|\Phi^+\rangle \otimes |0\rangle$. In it, the first and the second qubits are mutually entangled, forming a Bell pair, while the third qubit is not entangled with the first two qubits. While not separable (across the three qubits), this state is said to be *biseparable*. More discussion on multipartite entanglement can be found in Appendix B of Chapter 3.

A key fact about entanglement is that it does not survive a standard measurement (of all qubits). This is in the sense that, no matter what the quantum state is before the measurement, the post-measurement state is separable, since it is given by one of the vectors in the computational basis (see Fig. 2.1).

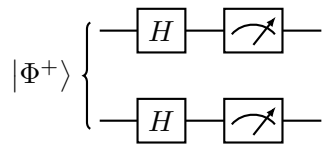


Figure 2.4: A quantum circuit used to illustrate the behavior of entangled qubits.

2.5.2 A First Example of the Non-Classical Behavior of Entangled Qubits

Consider two qubits in the Bell state $|\Phi^+\rangle$. If we directly apply a standard measurements to the two qubits in the Bell pair, by Born's rule, we obtain the output $x = 0$, i.e., the cbit string 00, with probability $1/2$, or $x = 3$, i.e., the cbit string 11, with the same probability. This behavior is equivalent to that of a classically correlated pair of random cbits that is in state $|00\rangle$ or $|11\rangle$ with equal probability, i.e., of random cbits with joint probability vector $p = [1/2, 0, 0, 1/2]^\dagger$.

Let us now allow the Bell pair to evolve as described in the quantum circuit of Fig. 2.4. Accordingly, a local Hadamard gate is applied separately to each qubit, as described in Sec. 2.4, before a standard measurement is made. Assume first (incorrectly) that the input state of the two qubits is state $|00\rangle$ or state $|11\rangle$ with equal probability, hence being equivalent to two fully correlated random cbits. By the property of the Kronecker product reviewed in Sec. 2.4, under this assumption, the state of the qubits at the output of the two Hadamard gates would be

$$\begin{aligned}(H \otimes H)|00\rangle &= (H \otimes H)(|0\rangle \otimes |0\rangle) = H|0\rangle \otimes H|0\rangle \\ &= |+\rangle \otimes |+\rangle = \frac{1}{2}(|00\rangle + |01\rangle + |10\rangle + |11\rangle) \qquad (2.42)\end{aligned}$$

or

$$\begin{aligned}(H \otimes H)|11\rangle &= (H \otimes H)(|1\rangle \otimes |1\rangle) = H|1\rangle \otimes H|1\rangle \\ &= |-\rangle \otimes |-\rangle = \frac{1}{2}(|00\rangle - |01\rangle - |10\rangle + |11\rangle) \qquad (2.43)\end{aligned}$$

with equal probability, where we have used the property (1.42) of the Hadamard gate.

It follows from the law of total probability that a standard measurement would yield outputs 00, 01, 10, or 11 with equal probability. Equivalently, the two output cbits produced by the measurements of the two qubits in Fig. 2.4 would be independent and would take either value 0 or 1 with probability 1/2. To sum up, if the state of the qubits at the input of the circuit was equivalent to that of classical correlated cbits, the presence of the Hadamard gates would destroy the statistical dependence between the two cbits, producing independent cbits at the output of the measurements.

Consider now the actual situation of interest in which the input quantum state is given by the Bell pair $|\Phi^+\rangle$. In this case, the state produced by the circuit in Fig. 2.4, prior to the measurement, is

$$\begin{aligned}(H \otimes H)|\Phi^+\rangle &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(H \otimes H)(|00\rangle + |11\rangle) \\ &= \frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}}(|00\rangle + |01\rangle + |10\rangle + |11\rangle + |00\rangle - |01\rangle - |10\rangle + |11\rangle) \\ &= |\Phi^+\rangle. \end{aligned} \tag{2.44}$$

It follows that the measurement of the two qubits produces the cbit string 00 or 11 with equal probability. Therefore, the local Hadamard gates leave the state of the system, $|\Phi^+\rangle$, unchanged, preserving the correlation between the two cbits produced by the measurement. (Mathematically, this happens because the state $|\Phi^+\rangle$ is an eigenvector of the operator $H \otimes H$.)

This example demonstrates that entangled qubits cannot be treated as correlated random cbits. In particular, we have concluded that the qubits in the Bell state $|\Phi^+\rangle$ cannot be considered as being in either state $|00\rangle$ or $|11\rangle$ with equal probability. This has intriguing implications on the nature of reality, as we will further discuss in Sec. 3.3.3.

2.5.3 Entangled States as Superpositions of Separable States

A basic fact about entangled states is that they can be always expressed as superpositions of multiple separable states. This follows straightforwardly from the fact that the 2^n vectors (2.10) in the computational basis are separable. Therefore, the superposition (2.21) is indeed a linear combination of separable states.

More generally, given an orthonormal basis $\{|v_{x_k}\rangle\}_{x_k=0}^{1}$ for each qubit $k \in \{0, 1, ..., n-1\}$, an orthonormal basis for the 2^n-dimensional Hilbert space of an n-qubit system can be obtained as the set of all 2^n states of the form

$$\{|v_{x_0}\rangle \otimes |v_{x_1}\rangle \otimes \cdots \otimes |v_{x_{n-1}}\rangle\}. \tag{2.45}$$

It follows that any quantum state for n qubits can be written as the superposition

$$|\psi\rangle = \sum_{x_0=0}^{1} \sum_{x_1=0}^{1} \cdots \sum_{x_{n-1}=0}^{1} \alpha_{x_0,x_1....,x_{n-1}} |v_{x_0}\rangle \otimes |v_{x_1}\rangle \otimes \cdots \otimes |v_{x_{n-1}}\rangle. \tag{2.46}$$

Even more broadly, we can decompose the set of n qubits into K subsets, each of n_k qubits with $\sum_{k=0}^{K-1} n_k = n$. Denoting as $\{|v_{x_k}\rangle\}_{x_k=0}^{2^{n_k}-1}$ any orthonormal basis for the 2^{n_k}-dimensional Hilbert space of the k-th subset of qubits, an orthonormal basis for the 2^n-dimensional Hilbert space for the n qubits is obtained as the set of all 2^n states of the form as

$$\{|v_{x_0}\rangle \otimes |v_{x_1}\rangle \otimes \cdots \otimes |v_{x_{K-1}}\rangle\}. \tag{2.47}$$

Accordingly, we can write the state of the n qubits as the superposition

$$|\psi\rangle = \sum_{x_0=0}^{N_0-1} \sum_{x_1=0}^{N_1-1} \cdots \sum_{x_{K-1}=0}^{N_{K-1}-1} \alpha_{x_0,x_1....,x_{K-1}} |v_{x_0}\rangle \otimes |v_{x_1}\rangle \otimes \cdots \otimes |v_{x_{K-1}}\rangle. \tag{2.48}$$

2.6 Multi-Qubit Quantum Gates

As explained in Sec. 2.4, systems of n qubits, when not measured, evolve according to a reversible linear transformation described by a $2^n \times 2^n$ unitary matrix. The situation is illustrated in Fig. 2.5, in which a bundle of n wires is used to indicate the presence of n wires, one for each qubit. Recall that, while the number of qubits is n, the size of matrix U is $2^n \times 2^n$.

While in principle all $2^n \times 2^n$ unitary matrices U are physically realizable, in practice one is limited to transformations that can be implemented via a, sufficiently short, sequences of one- and two-qubit

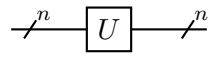


Figure 2.5: An n-qubit system, when not measured, evolves according to a reversible linear transformation described by a $2^n \times 2^n$ unitary matrix U.

gates. Specifically, for feasibility, the sequence should consist of a number of gates that grows polynomially with the number of qubits, n, and not with the number of amplitudes, 2^n. An example of a unitary obtained from the cascade of multiple single and two-qubit gates is shown in Fig. 2.2. In this section, generalizing the discussion in Sec. 1.4, we cover several ways to interpret and construct unitary matrices.

2.6.1 Separable Unitaries and Multi-Qubit Quantum Gates

As introduced in Sec. 2.4, the simplest type of unitary operating on n qubits is given by the separate application of single-qubit gates to each of the n individual qubits. This corresponds to a unitary matrix U obtained as the Kronecker product

$$U = U_0 \otimes U_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes U_{n-1}, \tag{2.49}$$

where each 2×2 unitary U_k, with $k \in \{0, 1, ..., n-1\}$, applies to the corresponding k-th qubit.

A particularly important category of separable unitary matrices is given by **strings of n Pauli matrices**. Let us write as P_s with $s \in \{0, 1, 2, 3\}$ a Pauli matrix, where

$$P_0 = I, \ P_1 = X, \ P_2 = Y, \text{ and } P_3 = Z. \tag{2.50}$$

Furthermore, let $s^n = [s_0, ..., s_{n-1}]$ be a vector of integers $s_k \in \{0, 1, 2, 3\}$ with $k \in \{0, 1, ..., n-1\}$. A string of n Pauli matrices P_{s^n} is given by the Kronecker product of n Pauli matrices

$$P_{s^n} = P_{s_0} \otimes P_{s_1} \otimes \cdots \otimes P_{s_{n-1}}, \tag{2.51}$$

where each matrix P_{s_k} is one of the Pauli matrices $\{I, X, Y, Z\}$.

By (2.51), a string of Pauli matrices P_{s^n} corresponds to the parallel application of single-qubit gates, with gate $P_{s_k} \in \{I, X, Y, Z\}$ being applied to the k-th qubit. Note that some of the Pauli matrices in (2.51)

can be selected as the identity matrix I, indicating that non-trivial quantum gates are applied only to a subset of qubits. The **weight** of a Pauli string is the number of Pauli operators in it that are different from the identity I.

As we have seen in Sec. 1.4.6, an arbitrary 2×2 matrix can be expressed as a linear combination of the four Pauli matrices $\{I, X, Y, Z\}$. More generally, an arbitrary $2^n \times 2^n$ (bounded) matrix A, with arbitrary complex entries, can be written as a linear combination of a linear combination of all 4^n strings of n Pauli matrices, i.e.,

$$A = \sum_{s^n \in \{0,1,2,3\}^n} a_{s^n} P_{s^n}, \tag{2.52}$$

with (generally complex) coefficients a_{s^n} given as

$$a_{s^n} = \frac{1}{2^n} \mathrm{tr}\left(A P_{s^n}\right). \tag{2.53}$$

For **Hermitian** matrices, the coefficients are real; while for unitary matrices the vector of coefficients has unitary norm.

By the decomposition (2.52), in a manner that parallels the relationship between separable and quantum states covered in Sec. 2.5.3, a unitary matrix operating on n qubits can be expressed as a linear combination of separable operators.

2.6.2 Quantum Gates as Change-of-Basis Transformations

As discussed in Sec. 1.4.3, a transformation is unitary if it can be written in the change-of-basis form

$$U = \sum_{x=0}^{2^n-1} |v_x\rangle\langle u_x|, \tag{2.54}$$

for two orthonormal bases $\{|v_0\rangle, |v_1\rangle, ..., |v_{2^n-1}\rangle\}$ and $\{|u_0\rangle, |u_1\rangle, ..., |u_{2^n-1}\rangle\}$ of the 2^n-dimensional Hilbert space. Accordingly, the transformation U maps each vector $|u_x\rangle$ in the first set of 2^n orthogonal vectors into a vector $|v_x\rangle$ in the second set of 2^n orthogonal vectors. Recall that, by linearity, specifying how the operator acts on each vector of a basis of 2^n orthogonal vectors as in the decomposition (2.54) is sufficient to describe the output of the operator for any input state.

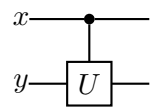


Figure 2.6: A two-qubit controlled quantum gate, also known as controlled-U gate.

As a useful special case, a transformation that maps vectors in the computational basis to a **permutation** of the same set of vectors. To define such a transformation, let $\pi(x)$ be a permutation of the integers $x \in \{0, 1, ..., 2^n - 1\}$. Then, the matrix operating as

$$U|x\rangle = |\pi(x)\rangle \tag{2.55}$$

on the computational basis is unitary.

One way to define a permutation $\pi(x)$ is via a **cyclic shift** of the n-bit binary strings x, with shift given by some n-cbit string y. This yields the permutation $\pi(x) = x \oplus y$, where $\oplus$ represents the element-wise XOR operation and x and y are interpreted as n-cbit strings. By (2.55), the resulting unitary matrix operates as

$$U|x\rangle = |x \oplus y\rangle \tag{2.56}$$

on the vectors of the computational basis.

2.6.3 Quantum Gates as Transformations with Unitary Magnitude Eigenvalues

As detailed in Sec. 1.4.4, unitary matrices are normal, and hence they can be characterized in terms of their eigendecomposition (1.45). Furthermore, all their eigenvalues have unitary magnitude.

For instance, a non-trivial Pauli string (2.51), in which at least one of the Pauli matrices is different from the identity, has an equal number, $2^n/2$, of eigenvalues equal to 1 and to -1. This follows from the fact that the set of eigenvalues of a Kronecker product of normal matrices is given by the set of all products of combinations of eigenvalues of the constituent matrices.

2.6.4 Two-Qubit Controlled Quantum Gates

A common way to construct two-qubit quantum gates is to use one qubit as a "switch" controlling whether a given single-qubit gate U is applied to a second qubit. This important construction is described in this subsection.

Given a single-qubit gate defined by a 2×2 unitary matrix U, a **two-qubit controlled quantum gate** is described by a 4×4 matrix C_{xy}^U, in which the first index x identifies the controlling qubit, while the second index y identifies the controlled qubit. The gate C_{xy}^U is also referred to as **controlled-U gate**. The symbol used to represent the controlled-U gate C_{xy}^U in a quantum circuit is shown in Fig. 2.6.

To describe the operation of the controlled-U gate, let us fix qubit $x = 0$ as the controlling qubit and qubit $x = 1$ as the controlled qubit for simplicity of notation. The controlled-U quantum gate C_{01}^U, applied to the system of the two qubits, is defined by the unitary matrix

$$C_{01}^U = |0\rangle\langle 0| \otimes I + |1\rangle\langle 1| \otimes U, \tag{2.57}$$

where I is the 2×2 identity matrix. One can easily check that this transformation is indeed unitary, since it satisfies the defining condition (1.31), i.e.,

$$\begin{aligned}(C_{01}^U)^\dagger C_{01}^U &= |0\rangle\langle 0| \otimes I + |1\rangle\langle 1| \otimes U^\dagger U \\ &= |0\rangle\langle 0| \otimes I + |1\rangle\langle 1| \otimes I \\ &= (|0\rangle\langle 0| + |1\rangle\langle 1|) \otimes I = I,\end{aligned} \tag{2.58}$$

where we have used the resolution-of-identity equality (cf. (1.39))

$$|0\rangle\langle 0| + |1\rangle\langle 1| = I. \tag{2.59}$$

Similarly, we have the equality $C_{01}^U (C_{01}^U)^\dagger = I$.

To see what a two-qubit controlled quantum gate does (and to prove in a different way that it is unitary), it is sufficient to evaluate the output of the gate when applied to the four vectors of the computational basis. As we have seen, sufficiency follows by linearity since any two-qubit state (2.21) can be expressed as a linear combination of computational-basis

vectors. We obtain

$$\begin{aligned} C_{01}^{U}|00\rangle &= (|0\rangle\langle 0| \otimes I + |1\rangle\langle 1| \otimes U)|00\rangle \\ &= |0\rangle\langle 0|0\rangle \otimes |0\rangle + |1\rangle\langle 1|0\rangle \otimes U|0\rangle \\ &= |0\rangle \otimes |0\rangle = |00\rangle \\ C_{01}^{U}|01\rangle &= |01\rangle \\ C_{01}^{U}|10\rangle &= |1\rangle \otimes U|0\rangle \\ C_{01}^{U}|11\rangle &= |1\rangle \otimes U|1\rangle. \end{aligned} \tag{2.60}$$

In words, when applied to vectors in the computational basis, the controlled quantum gate C_{01}^{U} applies the single-qubit gate U to the controlled qubit when the controlling qubit is in state $|1\rangle$, while no operation is applied to second qubit otherwise. The controlling qubit hence acts as a "switch" for the application of the single-qubit gate U on the controlled qubit.

As an example, assume that the input state of the two qubits is given by the superposition $|\psi\rangle = |+\rangle \otimes |\psi\rangle$, where $|\psi\rangle$ is an arbitrary state of the controlled qubit. Then, applying the controlled-U gate yields

$$C_{01}^{U}(|+\rangle \otimes |\psi\rangle) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|0\rangle \otimes |\psi\rangle + |1\rangle \otimes U|\psi\rangle). \tag{2.61}$$

Therefore, when the controlling qubit is in a superposition state, the computation separates into two superimposed **branches**. In one branch, the controlling qubit is in state $|0\rangle$ and hence the controlled qubit is unchanged, while in the other branch the controlling qubit is in state $|1\rangle$ and hence the controlled qubit undergoes transformation U. Note also that, while the input state $|+\rangle \otimes |\psi\rangle$ is separable, the output state (2.61) is generally entangled.

In matrix form, the controlled-U gate C_{01}^{U} gate can be written as

$$C_{01}^{U} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & U_{11} & U_{12} \\ 0 & 0 & U_{21} & U_{22} \end{bmatrix}, \tag{2.62}$$

where U_{kl} is the (k, l)-th entry of matrix U.

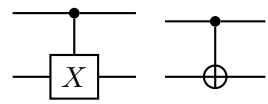


Figure 2.7: A CNOT gate, or controlled-X gate, represented in one of two equivalent ways (cf. Fig. 1.4). The representation on the right makes it clear that the CNOT gate, when applied to the computational-basis vectors, reports the XOR of the two states on the controlled qubit.

2.6.5 Examples of Two-Qubit Controlled Gates

An important two-qubit controlled gate is the **controlled-X (CX) gate**, also known as **controlled-NOT (CNOT)** gate, which is obtained by choosing the single-qubit gate $U = X$. Given its importance, it is common to denote the CNOT gate as C_{01}^X as C_{01}, hence removing the specification of the single qubit gate X. The CNOT gate is represented in a quantum circuit in either one of the two ways shown in Fig. 2.7, mirroring the corresponding representations of the NOT gate in Fig. 1.4.

The representation on the right of Fig. 1.4 helps remember that the CNOT gate, when applied to vectors in the computational basis, reports the XOR of the two pre-gate states on the state of the controlled qubit. Indeed, applying the CNOT gate to the states in the computational basis yields the outputs

$$\begin{aligned} C_{01}|00\rangle &= |0, 0 \oplus 0\rangle = |00\rangle \\ C_{01}|01\rangle &= |0, 0 \oplus 1\rangle = |01\rangle \\ C_{01}|10\rangle &= |1, 1 \oplus 0\rangle = |11\rangle \\ C_{01}|11\rangle &= |1, 1 \oplus 1\rangle = |10\rangle. \end{aligned} \tag{2.63}$$

The characterization (2.63) of the CNOT gate suggests a useful approach to define a larger class of unitary transformations as an extension of **classical reversible binary functions**. Accordingly, one starts with a reversible binary mapping to define the operation on computational-basis vectors, and then the unitary is extended by linearity to any quantum input state. For example, in the case of the CNOT gate, the classical function is the reversible implementation of the XOR operation given by $(x, y) \mapsto (x, x \oplus y)$ with $x, y \in \{0, 1\}$. Note

that this function can be readily inverted, since we have the mapping $(x, x \oplus y) \mapsto (x, x \oplus y \oplus x) = (x, y)$.

The mapping (2.63) can be also interpreted in terms of the characterization of unitary matrices discussed in Sec. 2.6.2. In fact, by (2.63), the CNOT gate maps vectors $|x, y\rangle$ in the computational basis to a permuted version of the same vectors as

$$C_{01}|x, y\rangle = |x, x \oplus y\rangle, \tag{2.64}$$

with $x, y \in \{0, 1\}$. The state $|x, y \oplus x\rangle$ is obtained by "shifting" by x the state of the second qubit.

As an example, consider the application of the CNOT gate to the Bell states $|\Psi^-\rangle$, which yields

$$C_{01}|\Psi^-\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} C_{01}(|01\rangle - |10\rangle) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|01\rangle - |11\rangle). \tag{2.65}$$

Specializing (2.62), we can also write the CNOT gate as the unitary matrix

$$C_{01} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}. \tag{2.66}$$

Another commonly implemented controlled gate is the **controlled-Z (CZ) gate**, which is obtained by setting the single qubit gate as $U = Z$. Unlike the CNOT gate, the operation of a CZ gate is symmetric with respect to the choice of the controlling and controlled qubits, in the sense that we have the equalities

$$C^Z_{01} = C^Z_{10} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}. \tag{2.67}$$

Reflecting this symmetry, the symbol used to describe a CZ gate in a quantum circuit is as in Fig. 2.8. Equivalently, we can describe a CZ gate via its application to the computational-basis vector as

$$C^Z_{10}|x, y\rangle = (-1)^{xy}|x, y\rangle \tag{2.68}$$

for all $x, y \in \{0, 1\}$.

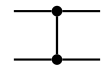


Figure 2.8: A controlled-Z (CZ) gate. The symbol reflects the symmetry of the gate with respect to the two qubits.

2.6.6 Quantum Gates from Hermitian Generators

As introduced in Sec. 1.4.5, a unitary matrix U can be expressed in terms of a Hermitian generator G via (1.52), i.e.,

$$U = \exp(-iG). \tag{2.69}$$

Using the decomposition (2.52) for the generator G allows us to write any $2^n \times 2^n$ unitary matrix U in terms of Pauli strings as

$$U = \exp(-iG) = \exp\left(-i\left(\sum_{s^n \in \{0,1,2,3\}^n} a_{s^n} P_{s^n}\right)\right), \tag{2.70}$$

where the coefficients a_{s^n} are real. Furthermore, by Euler's formula, if the sum includes a single Pauli string P, i.e., if $U = \exp(-iaP)$ for some real number a, we can also write

$$U = \exp(-iaP) = \cos(a)\, I - i \sin(a)\, P. \tag{2.71}$$

2.6.7 Universal Gates

We conclude this section by noting that the set of gates {CNOT, H, T}, where

$$T = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & \exp(i\frac{\pi}{4}) \end{bmatrix}, \tag{2.72}$$

is **universal**, that is, from these gates one can implement any unitary matrix on any number of qubits.

2.7 Creating Entanglement

In order to create entanglement between two qubits that are initially in a separable state (i.e., not entangled), it is necessary to apply two-qubit gates. A standard circuit that can be used to entangle two qubits is

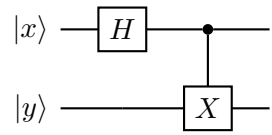


Figure 2.9: A CNOT-based circuit that produces entangled pairs in the Bell basis (with $x, y \in \{0, 1\}$).

shown in Fig. 2.9. For all separable input states of the form $|xy\rangle$ with $x, y \in \{0, 1\}$, the outputs of the circuit are given as

$$\begin{aligned} C_{01}(H \otimes I)|00\rangle &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|00\rangle + |11\rangle) = |\Phi^+\rangle \\ C_{01}(H \otimes I)|01\rangle &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|01\rangle + |10\rangle) = |\Psi^+\rangle \\ C_{01}(H \otimes I)|10\rangle &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|00\rangle - |11\rangle) = |\Phi^-\rangle \\ C_{01}(H \otimes I)|11\rangle &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|01\rangle - |10\rangle) = |\Psi^-\rangle. \end{aligned} \tag{2.73}$$

Therefore, the output vectors correspond to entangled pairs of qubits in the Bell basis. We can more concisely write the output of the circuit as the state

$$C_{01}(H \otimes I)|xy\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|0y\rangle + (-1)^x|1\bar{y}\rangle) \tag{2.74}$$

with $\bar{y} = y \oplus 1$.

One can also create entanglement via the controlled-Z (CZ) gate using the circuit shown in Fig. 2.10. It can be readily checked that this circuit yields the entangled state

$$\begin{aligned} |\psi\rangle &= \frac{1}{2}(|00\rangle + |01\rangle + |10\rangle - |11\rangle) \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|0\rangle|+\rangle + |1\rangle|-\rangle) \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|+\rangle|0\rangle + |-\rangle|1\rangle), \end{aligned} \tag{2.75}$$

which can be converted to the Bell state $|\Phi^+\rangle$ by applying the Hadamard gate H to the first qubit.

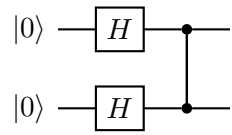


Figure 2.10: A CZ-based circuit that produces entangled pairs in the Bell basis (with $x, y \in \{0, 1\}$).

2.8 Amplitude Diagrams

As introduced in Sec. 1.5, amplitude diagrams provide an alternative means to visualize and describe the operation of a quantum circuit. Unlike the standard quantum circuit diagram with one wire per qubit, an amplitude diagram has one wire per amplitude, and it illustrate the interaction among the amplitudes as time flows from left to right. As a result, instead of having n wires like a quantum circuit, an amplitude diagram contains 2^n wires. This makes amplitude diagrams only applicable, in practice, for systems with a small number of qubits.

To illustrate the use of amplitude diagrams, consider the entangling circuit in Fig. 2.9. This corresponds to a 4×4 transformation, and hence it requires four wires, each reporting the amplitude of one of the states in the computational basis $\{|00\rangle, |10\rangle, |01\rangle, |11\rangle\}$. The resulting amplitude diagram is shown in Fig. 2.11. The operation of the Hamadard transformation on the first qubit is expressed by the matrix

$$H \otimes I = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}. \tag{2.76}$$

Interesting, while the operation is local, as is apparent from the quantum circuit in Fig. 2.9, the transformation applies jointly to all amplitudes, as illustrated by the amplitude diagram. The CNOT gate implements multiplication with matrix (2.66), which swaps the last two amplitudes. The figure shows the evolution of the amplitudes for the input state $|10\rangle$, producing as the output the Bell state $|\Phi^-\rangle$. In the figure, for simplicity, the amplitudes are not normalized.

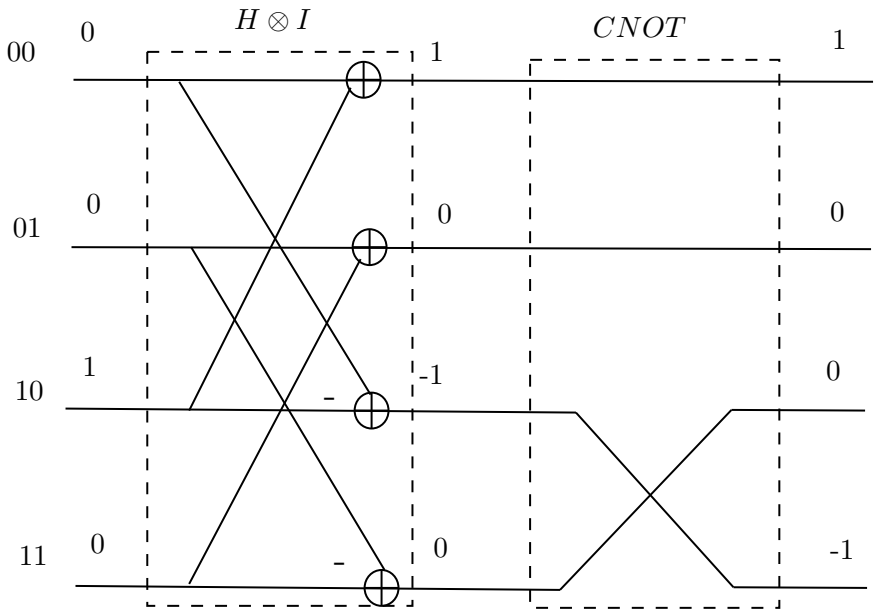


Figure 2.11: An amplitude diagram representing the operation of the entangling circuit in Fig. 2.9. The input state is $|10\rangle$, producing as the output state the Bell state $|\Phi^-\rangle$. The amplitudes at each step are not normalized for simplicity of visualization.

2.9 Superdense Coding

Entanglement provides a new resource that can be leveraged to support communications and computing primitives. In this section, we provide an example of the role that entanglement can play for communications. In particular, we will see how the availability of an entangled pair of qubits, with a qubit held at a transmitter and the other at a receiver, can increase the communication capacity between the two ends of the link.

To describe the setting of interest, consider a noiseless quantum channel whereby Alice can send one qubit (e.g., one photon) to Bob. With one qubit, it is possible to show that Alice cannot communicate more than a single cbit of information to Bob. In fact, it is possible to detect unambiguously only two states of a single qubit via a measurement. This is because one can only define two mutually orthogonal states in a two-dimensional space. This limitation remains true if Alice and Bob share statistically dependent cbits that are independent of the information cbits. That is, randomizing encoding and decoding strategies, even in a coordinated fashion based on shared randomness, is not useful in increasing the capacity between Alice and Bob.

Given this context, we ask the question: What if Alice and Bob share a pair of entangled qubits? To avoid trivial answers, we specifically assume that the qubits are prepared before selecting the information cbit and are hence independent of the information message.

To elaborate, assume that Alice and Bob share a Bell pair

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|00\rangle + |11\rangle) = |\Phi^+\rangle, \tag{2.77}$$

with the first qubit at Alice and the second at Bob. If this pair of qubits behaved as a pair of conventional cbits, the actual state of the system would $|00\rangle$ or $|11\rangle$ with equal probability. Accordingly, Alice and Bob would share one bit of common randomness. As discussed earlier in this section, common randomness cannot help Alice convey more information than a single cbit by sending a single qubit. But, as we have argued in Sec. 2.5.2, entangled qubits do not behave like correlated random cbits. This reinforces the question at hand: Can we use the

new resource of entanglement to enhance the classical capacity of the channel between Alice and Bob?

As we will see next, with a shared Bell pair, Alice can communicate *two* cbits to Bob with a single qubit. To this end, we follow the steps illustrated in Fig. 2.12, which are summarized as follows.

- Alice selects at random two cbits of information (x_0, x_1), with $x_0, x_1 \in \{0, 1\}$.
- Then, Alice encodes this information by applying a one-qubit gate to its qubit as indicated in Table 2.2. Mathematically, given two cbits , the transformation applied by Alice is described by the unitary $Z^{x_1} X^{x_0}$.
- After applying this transformation, Alice sends her qubit to Bob. Then, Bob applies the unitary transformation shown in Fig. 2.12 to both qubits. This transformation comprises the cascade of a CNOT and of a Hadamard gate to the first qubit before making a standard measurement.
- The output measurement cbits can be shown to equal the message (x_0, x_1) with probability 1.

Let us now verify that indeed the superdense coding protocol illustrated in Fig. 2.12, with Alice's encoding mapping in Table 2.2, allows Bob to recover Alice's message with probability 1. To this end, it can be directly checked that the state of the two qubits before the measurement, i.e., at step 3 in Fig. 2.12, is given by

$$\begin{aligned} |\psi^3\rangle &= |00\rangle \text{ if Alice chooses } I \\ |\psi^3\rangle &= |01\rangle \text{ if Alice chooses } X \\ |\psi^3\rangle &= |10\rangle \text{ if Alice chooses } Z \\ |\psi^3\rangle &= |11\rangle \text{ if Alice chooses } \tilde{Y} \end{aligned} \tag{2.78}$$

Therefore, by Born's rule, measuring the two qubits allows Bob to recover Alice's message.

To elaborate further on (2.78), let us consider as an example the case in which Alice chooses message 01 and hence, by Table 2.2, it applies

message	transformation
00	$I = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$
01	$X = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$
10	$Z = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$
11	$\tilde{Y} = ZX = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

Table 2.2: Mapping between message and transformation applied by Alice to her qubit in superdense coding.

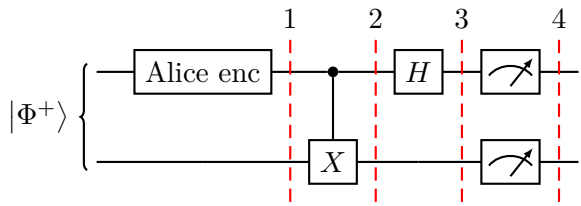


Figure 2.12: Operations carried out by Alice and Bob in superdense coding.

the Pauli X gate on her qubit. The two qubits assume the following states at the times numbered as in Fig. 2.12:

$$|\psi^1\rangle = (X \otimes I)|\Phi^+\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|10\rangle + |01\rangle)$$
$$|\psi^2\rangle = C_{AB}|\psi^1\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|11\rangle + |01\rangle)$$
$$|\psi^3\rangle = (H \otimes I)|\psi^2\rangle = \frac{1}{2}(|01\rangle - |11\rangle + |01\rangle + |11\rangle) = |01\rangle, \qquad (2.79)$$

where we have used indices A and B to identify the qubits at Alice and Bob, respectively.

As we will see in the next chapter, one way to understand why superdense coding works is to note that the four 4-dimensional states $|\psi^1\rangle$ obtained upon applying one of the four transformations by Alice

are orthogonal, and hence distinguishable at Bob. The "non-classicality" of this phenomenon is that the four distinguishable states are obtained by means of a local operations at Alice, who has only access to one of the two entangled qubits. To explain this perspective, in the next chapter, we will generalize the type of measurements considered thus far, which apply separately to each qubit, to *joint* measurements across multiple qubits.

2.10 Trading Quantum and Classical Resources

Superdense coding illustrates the general concept that classical and quantum resources can be traded for one another. In particular, superdense coding can be interpreted as revealing the following **resource transfer inequality**

$$1 \text{ ebit} + 1 \text{ qubit} \geq 2 \text{ cbits}, \tag{2.80}$$

where "ebit" indicates a Bell pair of entangled qubits. The inequality indicates that having the resources on the left-hand side allows one to realize the resources on the right-hand side. Since one qubit can encode 1 cbit of information, one can also think of this resource inequality as stating that the initial ebit can be converted into one cbit of *potential* information.

Another classical example of how one can trade classical and quantum resources is **teleportation**. To describe it, consider a classical channel that Alice can use to share cbits with Bob. In order to communicate exactly an arbitrary quantum state, Alice would need to transmit an infinite number of bits to describe a unitary-norm two-dimensional complex vector. But what if Alice and Bob share an entangled pair of qubits, which is independent of the qubit to the communicated? It turns out that in this case it is possible to communicate one qubit in an arbitrary state by communicating only two cbits from Alice to Bob. This leads to the resource inequality

$$1 \text{ ebit} + 2 \text{ cbits} \geq 1 \text{ qubits}. \tag{2.81}$$

2.11 Conclusions

In this chapter, we have introduced the formalism necessary to describe multi-qubit states. Extending the discussion for single qubits in the previous chapter, we have reviewed the two ways in which a quantum system can evolve, namely through a unitary transformation or through measurements. Unitary transforms are practically implemented via sequences of one- and two-qubit gates, with controlled gates playing a key role in the latter category. We have seen how, a new phenomenon presents itself in multi-qubit systems: entanglement. Entanglement can be viewed as a strong form of statistical dependence that has no classical counterpart. Entangled qubits provide a novel resource that can be used for computation and communications. The next chapter will cover more implications of entanglement (see Sec. 3.3.3).

2.12 Recommended Resources

As for the previous chapter, the reader is referred to [1] and [2] for clear and intuitive introductions to the topics covered in this chapter. For a physics-based perspective, useful references include [4], [5]. An introduction to tensor networks is provided by [6].

2.13 Problems

1. Show that it is possible to convert one Bell basis vector into any other by means of local unitary transformations applied at any of the two qubits. For instance, applying local operations on the first system as

$$(Z^z X^x \otimes I)|\Phi^+\rangle \tag{2.82}$$

   we have $|\Psi^+\rangle$ with $z = 0$ and $x = 1$; $|\Phi^-\rangle$ with $z = 1$ and $x = 0$; and $|\Psi^-\rangle$ with $z = 1$ and $x = 1$.

2. Show that the following four vectors are orthonormal and that

they have unitary norm:

$$\begin{aligned}
&\cos(\theta)|00\rangle + \sin(\theta)|11\rangle \\
&\cos(\theta)|01\rangle + \sin(\theta)|10\rangle \\
&\sin(\theta)|00\rangle - \cos(\theta)|11\rangle \\
&\sin(\theta)|01\rangle - \cos(\theta)|10\rangle.
\end{aligned} \tag{2.83}$$

Therefore, for any θ, these four vectors form an orthonormal basis of the 4-dimensional Hilbert space.

3. Use the first state in the orthonormal basis identified at the previous problem as the input for the circuit in Fig. 2.4. Compute the probability that the two random cbits at the output of the measurement are equal. Argue that, as θ increases in the interval $[0, \pi/2]$, the two input qubits are increasingly entangled.

4. Prove that for any 2×2 operator M, we have the equality $(M \otimes I)||\Phi^+\rangle = (I \otimes M^T)|\Phi^+\rangle$ (this is known as "transpose trick").

5. Consider the Bell state $|\Phi^+\rangle$ and apply the separable transformation $R_y(\theta_0) \otimes R_y(\theta_1)$ followed by a measurement. Demonstrate that the probability that the two cbits produced by the measurement are equal depends on the difference $\theta_0 - \theta_1$ of the two rotation angles θ_0 and θ_1.

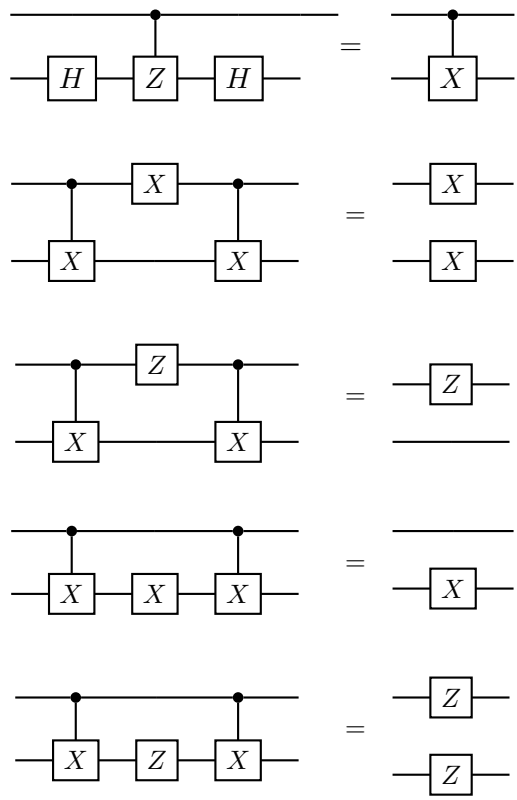
6. Describe **qudits** as an extension of qubits to multi-valued quantum states (see recommended resources).

7. Prove that superdense coding is private in the sense that an eavesdropper intercepting the transmitted qubit would not be able to obtain any information about the two bits encoded by Alice.

8. For superdense coding, show that the four 4-dimensional states $|\psi^1\rangle$ obtained upon applying the four transformations by Alice are orthogonal.

9. Describe teleportation (see recommended resources).

10. Prove the equivalence between quantum circuits illustrated in the figures below.



3

Generalizing Quantum Measurements (Part I)

3.1 Introduction

In this chapter, we generalize quantum measurements in two important ways:

- We introduce von Neumann measurements in *any* orthonormal basis – not limited to the computational basis;
- and we discuss situations in which only a *subset* of the qubits is measured.

The first generalization will allow us to define *joint* measurements across multiple qubits, which go beyond the separate, per-qubit, measurements considered thus far. The second will leads us to define the key concepts of density state, decoherence, and partial trace.

3.2 Measurements in an Arbitrary Orthonormal Basis

So far, we have considered the most common type of von Neumann measurements, namely measurements in the computational basis $\{|x\rangle\}_{x=0}^{2^n-1}$, also known as **standard measurements**. As described in the previous chapter and illustrated in Fig. 2.1, these amount to separate

measurements of each qubit. In this section, we generalize von Neumann measurements by allowing for measurements in an arbitrary orthonormal basis. As we will see, this generalized class of von Neumann measurements includes also joint measurements across multiple qubits.

Throughout this chapter, and the rest of the monograph, we will interchangeably use the integer notation $x \in \{0, 1, ..., 2^n - 1\}$ and the n-cbit string notation $x_0, x_1, ..., x_{n-1}$ with $x_k \in \{0, 1\}$, which are mutually related via (2.4). Specifically, we will write $x \in \{0, 1\}^n$ to denote either an integer in the range $\{0, 1, ..., 2^n - 1\}$ or the corresponding n-cbit string. Given the one-to-one mapping (2.4), conflating the two quantities is well justified and notationally convenient.

3.2.1 Reviewing Standard Measurements

For a system of n qubits in pre-measurement state $|\psi\rangle$, by Born's rule (2.32), a standard measurement return $x \in \{0, 1\}^n$ with probability

$$|\langle x|\psi\rangle|^2, \tag{3.1}$$

leaving the system in the post-measurement state equal the computational basis vector $|x\rangle$. The probability (3.1) corresponds to the magnitude squared of the projection of state $|\psi\rangle$ onto the computational-basis vector $|x\rangle$. As a result of the measurement, the quantum state $|\psi\rangle$ "collapses" into one of the vectors in the computational basis. Recall that each vector $|x\rangle = |x_0, x_1, ..., x_{n-1}\rangle$ in the computational basis corresponds to a separable state in which each qubit k has an individual state $|x_k\rangle$. Therefore, a standard measurement destroys any entanglement that may exist in the pre-measurement state $|\psi\rangle$.

3.2.2 Defining Measurements in an Arbitrary Orthonormal Basis

To specify the more general form of von Neumann measurement of interest in this section, we fix a set of 2^n orthonormal basis vectors $|v_0\rangle, ..., |v_{2^n-1}\rangle$, each of dimension $2^n \times 1$. Choosing the vectors in the computational basis, i.e., setting $|v_x\rangle = |x\rangle$ for all $x \in \{0, 1\}^n$, recovers the standard measurement. More generally, the vectors $|v_x\rangle$ may be in principle chosen in an arbitrary way, as long as they form an orthonormal

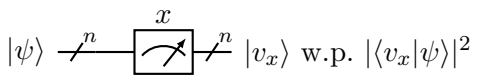


Figure 3.1: Illustration of a von Neumann measurement in an arbitrary orthonormal basis $\{|v_x\rangle\}_{x=0}^{2^n-1}$. Note that in this figure we make an exception to the conventional used in the rest of the text of using the "meter" block to represent a measurement in the computational basis.

basis. In particularly, they may be separable or entangled. We will see that separable states describe separate, per-qubit, measurements, while entangled states specify joint measurements across multiple qubits.

Given an input state $|\psi\rangle$, a measurement in the basis $\{|v_0\rangle, ..., |v_{2^n-1}\rangle\}$ is defined by the following two properties, which are illustrated in Fig. 3.1.

- **Born's rule**: The probability of observing the n-cbit string $x \in \{0,1\}^n$ is

$$\Pr[\text{measurement output equals } x \in \{0,1\}^n] = |\langle v_x|\psi\rangle|^2; \quad (3.2)$$

- **"Collapse" of the state**: If the measured n-cbit string is x, the **post-measurement state** of the qubits is $|v_x\rangle$.

As anticipated, these properties recover the definition of a standard measurement given in the previous chapter when we set $|v_x\rangle = |x\rangle$ for all $x \in \{0,1\}^n$. Note, in particular, that the probability (3.2) corresponds, geometrically, to the projection of the quantum state $|\psi\rangle$ onto the basis vector $|v_x\rangle$. It is also useful to observe that, unlike the special case of standard measurements, the post-measurement state $|v_x\rangle$ need not be separable.

3.2.3 Implementing Measurements in an Arbitrary Orthonormal Basis

As we discuss in this subsection, a measurement in an arbitrary orthonormal basis $\{|v_x\rangle\}_{x=0}^{2^n-1}$ can be equivalently realized via standard measurements (in the computational basis) by applying suitable unitary transformations before and after the measurement as illustrated in Fig. 3.2. While standard measurements are always separable across qubits,

the pre- and post-measurement unitaries are generally not separable. In particular, measurements defined by orthonormal bases with entangled state will be seen to require unitary transformations that apply across multiple qubits.

The unitary transformation to be applied before the measurement maps each vector $|v_x\rangle$ into the computational-basis vector $|x\rangle$. Intuitively, by applying such a change-of-basis mapping, one can use a standard measurement to measure in the basis $\{|v_x\rangle\}_{x=0}^{2^n-1}$. Following the discussion in Sec. 2.6.2, this transformation is given by the unitary matrix

$$U_{v_x \to x} = \sum_{x=0}^{2^n-1} |x\rangle\langle v_x|. \tag{3.3}$$

The post-measurement transformation is given by the inverse of the pre-measurement transformation $U_{v_x \to x}$, i.e.,

$$U_{v_x \to x}^{-1} = U_{v_x \to x}^{\dagger} = U_{x \to v_x} = \sum_{x=0}^{2^n-1} |v_x\rangle\langle x|, \tag{3.4}$$

which maps the computational-basis vector $|x\rangle$ into vector $|v_x\rangle$.

To see that the circuit in Fig. 3.2 implements a von Neumann measurement in basis $\{|v_x\rangle\}_{x=0}^{2^n-1}$, consider the operation of the standard measurement on the state $U_{x \to v_x}|x\rangle$ produced by the first change-of-basis transformation. By the Born rule, we have that the probability of observing measurement x is

$$|\langle x|U_{v_x \to x}|\psi\rangle|^2 = |(U_{x \to v_x}|x\rangle)^{\dagger}|\psi\rangle|^2 = |\langle v_x|\psi\rangle|^2, \tag{3.5}$$

which coincides with (3.2). Furthermore, after the second transformation, the post-measurement state corresponding to observation x is $U_{x \to v_x}|x\rangle = |v_x\rangle$, since the post-measurement state is $|x\rangle$.

To illustrate the operation of the circuit in Fig. 3.2, let us consider some examples involving a single qubit, i.e., $n = 1$. Measuring a qubit in the diagonal basis $\{|+\rangle, |-\rangle\}$ requires implementing the pre-measurement unitary (3.3) that maps the diagonal basis into the computational basis. As discussed in Sec. 1.4.3, this can be done via the Hadamard transform H, which maps state $|+\rangle$ to $|0\rangle$ and state $|-\rangle$ to $|1\rangle$. Alternatively, it can also be implemented via the Pauli Y-rotation $R_Y(\pi/2)$, which maps state $|-\rangle$ to $|0\rangle$ and $|+\rangle$ to $|1\rangle$.

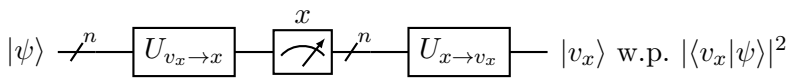


Figure 3.2: Implementation of a measurement in an arbitrary orthonormal basis $\{|v_x\rangle\}_{x=0}^{2^n-1}$ via standard measurements and unitary pre- and post-measurement transformations. Note that here, and in the rest of the text, the "meter" block represents a standard measurement.

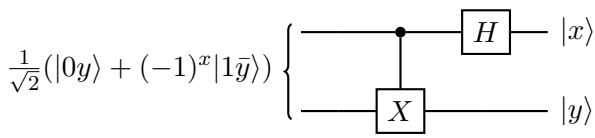


Figure 3.3: Unitary transformation $U_{\text{Bell}\to\text{Comp}}$ between Bell-basis vectors and computational-basis vectors.

The architecture in Fig. 3.2 suggests that the complexity of performing measurements in arbitrary basis functions depends on degree to which the unitary $U_{v_x \to x}$ can be efficiently described by one or two-qubit gates. As anticipated, if all basis vectors $|v_x\rangle$ are separable, it is easy to see that the transformation $U_{v_x \to x}$ in (3.3) is also separable across the n qubits, and so is its inverse $U_{x \to v_x}$. Therefore, in this case, the circuit in Fig. 3.2 can be realized with single-qubit gates only.

In other applications, it is useful to consider *joint* measurements across multiple qubits, which are defined by orthonormal bases with entangled states. These require the use of quantum gates involving more than one qubit in order to implement the transformation $U_{v_x \to x}$.

An important example is given by the **joint measurement of two qubits in the Bell basis** (see Sec. 2.3.1). Such a measurement is specified by the Bell basis $\{|\Phi^+\rangle, |\Psi^+\rangle, |\Phi^-\rangle, |\Psi^+\rangle\}$ for the $2^n = 2^2 =$ 4-dimensional Hilbert space. Note that these vectors correspond to entangled states.

The Bell basis measurement can be implemented by means of the general circuit in Fig. 3.2 by employing the transformation $U_{v_x \to x}$ between Bell-basis vectors and computational-basis vectors and its inverse. The change-of-basis transformation $U_{v_x \to x}$ at hand – which we will denote as $U_{\text{Bell}\to\text{Comp}}$ – can be implemented as in Fig. 3.3 via the cascade of a CNOT gate and a Hadamard gate on the first qubit. In

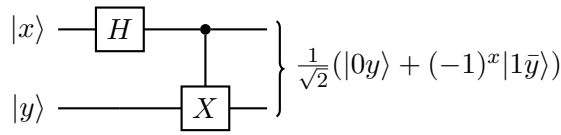


Figure 3.4: Unitary transformation $U_{\text{Comp}\to\text{Bell}}$ between computational-basis vectors and Bell-basis vectors.

fact, we have the mapping

$$\begin{aligned} U_{\text{Bell}\to\text{Comp}}|\Phi^+\rangle &= |00\rangle \\ U_{\text{Bell}\to\text{Comp}}|\Psi^+\rangle &= |01\rangle \\ U_{\text{Bell}\to\text{Comp}}|\Phi^-\rangle &= |10\rangle \\ U_{\text{Bell}\to\text{Comp}}|\Psi^-\rangle &= |11\rangle, \end{aligned} \tag{3.6}$$

as summarized in Fig. 3.3. The inverse transformation,

$$U_{\text{Comp}\to\text{Bell}} = U^\dagger_{\text{Bell}\to\text{Comp}}, \tag{3.7}$$

is implemented by running the circuit in Fig. 3.3 backwards, as shown in Fig. 3.4.

3.2.4 Revisiting Superdense Coding

As an application of the generalized measurements introduced in this section, here we revisit the operation of superdense coding, which is illustrated in Fig. 2.12. As discussed in Sec. 2.9, by applying local unitaries as in Table 2.2, Alice can ensure that the pair of entangled qubits – one at Alice, the other at Bob – is in one of the four Bell basis states. After transferring her bit to Bob, Alice has thus guaranteed that the four messages consisting of 2 cbits of information are encoded into orthogonal states of the two qubits, now both at Bob's side. How can Bob detect which of the four orthogonal states was produced by Alice's encoding operation?

This can be done by implementing a joint measurement in the Bell basis as described in the previous subsection. For instance, if Alice encodes message 01, the joint state of the two qubits after Alice's encoding operation is $|\Psi^+\rangle$ (see Sec. 2.9). Therefore, by the Born rule

(3.2) and given the mapping (3.6), a Bell basis measurement returns output 01 with probability 1.

Based on this observation, we can now interpret the operation carried out at Bob after Alice's encoding in 2.12 as a measurement in Bell basis. In fact, the circuit consisting of CNOT gate followed by the Hadamard gate implements the Bell-basis-to-computational basis transformation $U_{\text{Bell}\to\text{Comp}}$ in Fig. 3.3. Therefore, the final measurement in the computational basis in Fig. 2.12 effectively produces the output of a joint measurement in the Bell basis.

3.2.5 Computing the Norm of the Inner Product of Two Vectors

As another example of the usefulness of measuring in an arbitrary basis, consider the seemingly unrelated problem of computing the squared absolute value of the inner product between two vectors $|w\rangle$ and $|\psi\rangle$ of equal dimension 2^n, i.e., $|\langle w|\psi\rangle|^2$. This is known as the **fidelity** between states $|w\rangle$ and $|\psi\rangle$. The inner product plays a key role in many signal processing and machine learning applications, in which w is typically interpreted as a weight vector. We will see next that we can estimate the quantity $|\langle w|\psi\rangle|^2$ by making a measurement of a state vector $|\psi\rangle$ in an orthonormal basis that includes vector $|w\rangle$ (as well as other $2^n - 1$ arbitrary mutually orthogonal vectors of unitary norm).

By Born's rule, for such a measurement, the desired quantity $|\langle w|\psi\rangle|^2$ is the probability of observing the output corresponding to vector $|w\rangle$. Using the architecture in Fig. 3.2, this measurement can be implemented by constructing a unitary U_w that maps the basis at hand to the computational basis. This transform may be, for instance, vector $|w\rangle$ into vector $|0\rangle$ in the computational basis, i.e., $U_w|w\rangle = |0\rangle$. This way, the probability of observing output 0 from a standard measurement of the state $U_w|\psi\rangle$ equals $|\langle w|\psi\rangle|^2$. Therefore, the quantity $|\langle w|\psi\rangle|^2$ can be estimated by repeating the described measurement multiple times and evaluating the fraction of measured outcomes equal to 0.

The same circuit outlined in the previous paragraph can be also used to design a stochastic binary **"quantum neuron"**. To this end, given an input state $|\psi\rangle$, we apply the unitary U_w and then make the described measurement in a basis including $|w\rangle$. Then, we take the

output of the neuron to be "active" if the measurement returns 0, and to be "inactive" otherwise. As we have seen, the probability of the neuron being "active" is $|\langle w|\psi\rangle|^2$, and hence we can think of the function $|\cdot|^2$ as an activation function for the neuron. Note that with only n qubits, this type of neuron can operate on vectors of exponentially large size 2^n. Caution should, however, be exercised in interpreting this conclusion, since preparing state $|\psi\rangle$ based on a classical data vector of size 2^n may still entail an exponential complexity in n.

3.3 Partial Measurements

In this section, we study a further extension of quantum measurements whereby only a subset of qubits are measured (in some orthonormal basis). We are interested in generalizing the Born rule, hence identifying the probability distribution over the measurement outputs; as well as in describing the post-measurement state of all qubits, both measured and not measured.

Measurements of a subset of qubits are of interest for the following reasons, among others:

- Many quantum protocols, such as teleportation, entanglement swapping, and quantum error correction, rely on measurements of a subset of qubits to determine subsequent quantum operations to be applied on the system.

- Open quantum systems interact, and become entangled with, qubits in the environment – a process that can be modelled as a partial measurement applied by the environment on the quantum system.

- Partial measurements can be used to implement projective measurements, which find many applications, including quantum error correction (see Sec. 5.2).

In this section, we describe partial measurements, and we also cover a "'spooky" implication of the formalism introduced here concerning the behavior of entangled qubits.

3.3.1 Introducing Partial, Single-Qubit, Measurements

To describe partial measurements, we start by considering a quantum system of n qubits in which we measure only the first qubit. The description provided in this subsection applies directly to the measurement of *any* one of the n qubits in the system by properly reordering the operations involved. We focus first on measurements in the computational basis.

To begin, observe that the state $|\psi\rangle_n$ of the overall system of n qubits can always be expressed as

$$|\psi\rangle_n = \alpha_0|0\rangle|\phi_0\rangle_{n-1} + \alpha_1|1\rangle|\phi_1\rangle_{n-1}, \tag{3.8}$$

where $|\phi_0\rangle_{n-1}$ and $|\phi_1\rangle_{n-1}$ are (unitary norm) $2^{n-1} \times 1$ state vectors, and the amplitudes α_0 and α_1 satisfy the equality $|\alpha_0|^2 + |\alpha_1|^2 = 1$. We will see in the next subsection that the amplitudes can be chosen without loss of generality as real numbers. Note that the subscript here is used to indicate the number of qubits whose state is described by the corresponding ket vector. The decomposition (3.8) expresses the n-qubit state $|\psi\rangle_n$ as a superposition of two states in which the first qubit is in either state $|0\rangle$ or state $|1\rangle$.

As a numerical example of the decomposition in (3.8), consider the state of $n = 3$ qubits

$$|\psi\rangle_3 = \frac{i}{2}|000\rangle + \frac{12+5i}{26}|001\rangle - \frac{1}{2}|101\rangle + \frac{3}{10}|110\rangle - \frac{2i}{5}|111\rangle, \tag{3.9}$$

which can be written in the form (3.8) as

$$\begin{aligned}
|\psi\rangle_3 =& |0\rangle\left(\frac{i}{2}|00\rangle + \frac{12+5i}{2}|01\rangle\right) + |1\rangle\left(\frac{1}{2}|01\rangle + \frac{3}{10}|10\rangle - \frac{2i}{5}|11\rangle\right) \\
=& \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}|0\rangle \underbrace{\left(\frac{i}{\sqrt{2}}|00\rangle + \sqrt{2}\frac{12+5i}{26}|01\rangle\right)}_{|\phi_0\rangle} \\
&+ \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}|1\rangle \underbrace{\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}|01\rangle + \frac{3}{10}\sqrt{2}|10\rangle - \sqrt{2}\frac{2i}{5}|11\rangle\right)}_{|\phi_1\rangle}.
\end{aligned} \tag{3.10}$$

In the decomposition (3.8), the vectors $|\phi_0\rangle_{n-1}$ and $|\phi_1\rangle_{n-1}$ are not necessarily orthogonal. This can be readily checked in the example

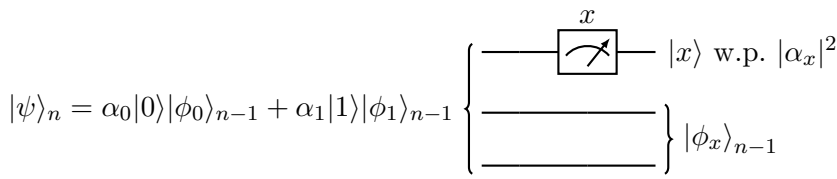


Figure 3.5: Illustration of a partial measurement for a system of $n = 3$ qubits in which a standard measurement is applied to the first qubit.

above. In fact, the two vectors $|\phi_0\rangle_{n-1}$ and $|\phi_1\rangle_{n-1}$ can even be equal, i.e., $|\phi_0\rangle_{n-1} = |\phi_1\rangle_{n-1} = |\phi\rangle_{n-1}$, in which case the first qubit is not entangled with the other $n-1$ qubits, since the joint state is separable:

$$|\psi\rangle_n = (\alpha_0|0\rangle + \alpha_1|1\rangle)|\phi\rangle_{n-1}. \tag{3.11}$$

Having introduced the decomposition (3.8), we are now ready to define the operation of a single-qubit measurement on the first qubit. As illustrated in Fig. 3.5, a partial measurement in the computational basis for the first qubit of a system in state $|\psi\rangle$ is described as follows.

- **Generalized Born's rule**: The probability of observing $x \in \{0, 1\}$ is

$$\Pr[\text{measurement output equals } x] = |\alpha_x|^2; \tag{3.12}$$

- **"Partial collapse" of the state**: If the measured cbit is $x \in \{0, 1\}$, the post-measurement state is $|x\rangle|\phi_x\rangle_{n-1}$.

It can be readily seen that a partial measurement coincides with a standard measurement when $n = 1$.

After a partial measurement of the first qubit, given the post-measurement state $|x\rangle|\phi_x\rangle_{n-1}$, the first qubit is not entangled with the remaining $n-1$ qubits, irrespective of whether it was entangled under the original state $|\psi\rangle_n$. Furthermore, the "collapse" of the state is partial, in the sense that only the state of the first qubit reduces to one of the vectors, $|x\rangle$, in the computational basis. In contrast, the state of the remaining qubits, namely $|\phi_x\rangle_{n-1}$, still depends on the amplitudes of the original state $|\psi\rangle$. Therefore, an observer obtaining measurement outcome x would only know the state of the first qubit,

namely $|x\rangle$, while specifying the state $|\phi_x\rangle_{n-1}$ of the remaining qubits would generally require knowledge of the amplitudes of the original state $|\psi\rangle$.

To illustrate the effect of a partial measurement, consider again the state (3.10). Making a standard measurement on the first qubit, the probability of observing cbit 0 is 1/2, and the corresponding post-measurement state is $|0\rangle\left(\frac{i}{\sqrt{2}}|00\rangle + \sqrt{2}\frac{12+5i}{26}|01\rangle\right)$. After the measurement, the first qubit is not entangled with the rest of the system (but the last two qubits are mutually entangled).

3.3.2 Defining Partial, Single-Qubit, Measurements

In this subsection, we provide a more formal description of partial measurements of a single qubit introduced in the previous section. To this end, we start by observing that the decomposition (3.8) can be constructed as follows:

1. Evaluate the unnormalized states

$$|\tilde{\phi}_x\rangle_{n-1} = (\langle x| \otimes I)|\psi\rangle_n \tag{3.13}$$

for $x \in \{0, 1\}$, where the identity matrix is of dimension $2^{n-1} \times 2^{n-1}$.

2. Set the amplitudes as

$$\alpha_x = \sqrt{\langle\tilde{\phi}_x|_{n-1}|\tilde{\phi}_x\rangle_{n-1}} = |||\tilde{\phi}_x\rangle_{n-1}|| \tag{3.14}$$

for $x \in \{0, 1\}$.

3. Compute the normalized states

$$|\phi_x\rangle_{n-1} = \frac{1}{\alpha_x}|\tilde{\phi}_x\rangle_{n-1} \tag{3.15}$$

for $x \in \{0, 1\}$.

Note that this construction demonstrates that the amplitudes $\{\alpha_x\}_{x=0}^1$ can be taken without loss of generality to be real and positive.

As an example, for the state in (3.9), we have the unnormalized states as

$$|\tilde{\phi}_0\rangle_2 = (\langle 0| \otimes I)|\psi\rangle_3 = \frac{i}{2}|00\rangle + \frac{12+5i}{2}|01\rangle \tag{3.16}$$

and

$$|\tilde{\phi}_1\rangle_2 = (\langle 1| \otimes I)|\psi\rangle_3 = \frac{1}{2}|01\rangle + \frac{3}{10}|10\rangle - \frac{2i}{5}|11\rangle, \tag{3.17}$$

from which we can obtain (3.10) by following steps 2 and 3 in the procedure outlined in the previous paragraph.

With these definitions, a partial measurement in the computational basis for the first qubit of a quantum system in state $|\psi\rangle$ is described as follows.

- **Generalized Born's rule**: The probability of observing $x \in \{0,1\}$ is

$$\Pr[\text{measurement output equals } x] = (\langle x| \otimes I)|\psi\rangle_n\langle\psi|_n(|x\rangle \otimes I); \tag{3.18}$$

- **"Partial collapse" of the state**: If the measured cbit is $x \in \{0,1\}$, the post-measurement state is $|x\rangle|\phi_x\rangle_{n-1}$ with

$$|\phi_x\rangle_{n-1} = \frac{(\langle x| \otimes I)|\psi\rangle_n}{\sqrt{(\langle x| \otimes I)|\psi\rangle_n\langle\psi|_n(|x\rangle \otimes I)}}. \tag{3.19}$$

This description coincides with that given in the previous subsection, and has the advantage of depending directly on the state $|\psi\rangle$. Furthermore, it is straightforward to extend it to a measurement of the first qubit in any orthonormal basis $\{|v_x\rangle\}_{x=0}^1$ by replacing x with v_x in (3.18) and (3.19).

3.3.3 Spooky Action at a Distance

As an example of the use of partial measurements, let us consider a situation in which two qubits in the Bell pair $|\Phi^+\rangle = 1/\sqrt{2}(|00\rangle + |11\rangle)$ are physically separated by a large distance. Recall Bell states describe entangled qubits. The first qubit is at an agent conventionally called

Alice, say in London, while the second qubit is at a second agent called Bob, say on the moon. Alice carries out a standard measurement of her qubit, while Bob does not apply any operation or measurement on his qubit.

By the generalized Born rule described in the previous two subsections, Alice will observe measurement outputs 0 or 1 with equal probability 1/2. Furthermore, the post-measurement state is $|x, x\rangle$ when the measurement output is $x \in \{0, 1\}$. In words, after Alice's measurement, the qubits are no longer entangled, and they assume the same state $|x\rangle$, where $x \in \{0, 1\}$ is the measurement output. What is strange about this situation?

As we have discussed in Sec. 2.5.2, prior to Alice's measurement, the two qubits are *not* in either state $|00\rangle$ or state $|11\rangle$. They *must* instead be described as being in the superposition state $|\Phi^+\rangle = 1/\sqrt{2}(|00\rangle + |11\rangle)$. Therefore, Alice's measurement has somehow caused a change in the joint state of the two qubits, which are no longer in state $|\Phi^+\rangle$ but rather in either state $|00\rangle$ or state $|11\rangle$ depending on the measurement output. This is surprising because Bob's qubit may be in principle arbitrarily far from Alice's.

Overall, it appears that there has been an **instantaneous "action"** from one qubit to the other – a physical impossibility due to limit imposed by the speed of light. This is what Einstein called **"spooky action at a distance"**. But has anything measurable actually been transferred instantaneously?

It is true that Alice, based on her measurement, can predict, with certainty, the output of a standard measurement of Bob's qubit carried out after Alice's measurement. But from Bob's perspective nothing has changed. Since Bob does not know Alice's measurement, he should view his qubit as being in either state $|0\rangle$ or $|1\rangle$, corresponding to the two possible measurement outputs. Therefore, a measurement of Bob's qubit would return 0 or 1 with equal probability, as if Alice had not carried out her measurement. So, no information has actually been transferred from Alice to Bob through Alice's measurement, and there has been no violation of the speed of light limit.

That said, if we wished to simulate the evolution of the state of this two-qubit system using a classical distributed system, information

about Alice's measurement output should indeed reach instantaneously the classical system at Bob's end in order to ensure a correct update of the joint quantum state.

More discussion on entanglement and partial measurements can be found in Appendix B at the end of this chapter for systems involving more than two qubits.

3.3.4 Defining Partial, Multi-Qubit, Measurements

In this subsection, we extend the partial measurement formalism introduced above to systems of n qubits in which we measure any subset of $n' \leq n$ qubits in any orthonormal basis $\{|v_x\rangle_{n'}\}_{x=0}^{2^{n'}-1}$. To this end, let us order the qubits so that the first n' qubits are measured. Then, given an input state $|\psi\rangle$, the generalized Born rule (3.18) and the post-measurement state (3.19) are directly extended as follows.

- **Generalized Born's rule**: The probability of observing $x \in \{0,1\}^{n'}$ is

$$\Pr[\text{measurement output equals } x] = (\langle v_x|_{n'} \otimes I)|\psi\rangle_n \langle\psi|_n (|v_x\rangle_{n'} \otimes I), \tag{3.20}$$

  where the identity matrix I is of dimension $2^{n-n'} \times 2^{n-n'}$;

- **"Partial collapse" of the state**: If the measured cbits are given by string $x \in \{0,1\}^{n'}$, the post-measurement state is $|v_x\rangle_{n'}|\phi_x\rangle_{n-n'}$

$$|\phi_x\rangle_{n-n'} = \frac{(\langle v_x|_{n'} \otimes I)|\psi\rangle_n}{\sqrt{(\langle v_x|_{n'} \otimes I)|\psi\rangle_n \langle\psi|_n (|v_x\rangle_{n'} \otimes I)}}. \tag{3.21}$$

3.4 Non-Selective Partial Measurements and Decoherence

What happens if, as illustrated in Fig. 3.6, we measure the qubits of one subsystem, say A, and we "throw away" the result of this measurement? By "throwing away" we mean that the result of the measurement is not retained, and hence there is epistemic uncertainty about the outcome of the measurement and about the corresponding post-measurement state. Intuitively, discarding the outcome of the measurement introduces

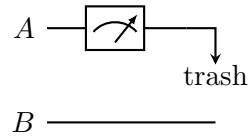


Figure 3.6: A non-selective partial measurement on subsystem A.

classical randomness in the evolution of the system. We are interested in describing the state of the remaining subsystem B, so as to be able to describe how subsystem B may evolve after the measurement of subsystem A. A measurement of the type illustrated in Fig. 3.6 is known as a **non-selective measurement**, and is the subject of this section.

Non-selective measurements may be intentionally added in a quantum circuit as a resource to implement probabilistic computing. They also happen naturally in an **open quantum system** in which a subsystem – subsystem B in Fig. 3.6 – gets entangled with its environment – subsystem A. This is a typical situation in quantum computers, whose qubits inevitably becoming entangled with the environment after some (short) period of time. The environment effectively acts as an observer, whose measurements are not available to the original subsystem B, e.g., the quantum computer. Since the subsystem B does not have access to the environment, in order to describe how subsystem B evolves through unitary transformations and measurements, one can assume that a measurement was made by the environment that was "thrown away" (from the viewpoint of subsystem B). The outlined interaction with the environment is known as **decoherence**, and is a key problem in quantum computing.

To elaborate, let us consider again the example in Fig. 3.5, in which the post-measurement state of the subsystem B consisting of the second set of $n-1$ qubits is $|\phi_0\rangle_{n-1}$ with probability $|\alpha_0|^2$ and $|\phi_1\rangle_{n-1}$ with probability $|\alpha_1|^2$. This is a state characterized by classical randomness in that there is epistemic uncertainty on the state of the $n-1$ qubits. As a result, the state of the subsystem B cannot be described using the ket state formulation, since the outlined situation is not equivalent to

having the $n-1$ qubits in the superposition state $\alpha_0|\phi_0\rangle_{n-1}+\alpha_1|\phi_1\rangle_{n-1}$. Instead, we can only say that subsystem B is in the **ensemble state**

$$\{(|\phi_0\rangle_{n-1}, |\alpha_0|^2), (|\phi_1\rangle_{n-1}, |\alpha_1|^2)\}, \tag{3.22}$$

in which subsystem B is in state $|\phi_x\rangle_{n-1}$ with probability $|\alpha_x|^2$.

Referring to a standard ket state as being **coherent**, we can say that the set of $n-1$ qubits in the example has lost "coherence" as a result of the measurement of the first qubit.

It is important to emphasize that the loss of coherence only occurs when the $n-1$ qubits in subsystem B are *entangled* with the first qubit being measured in a non-selective manner. To see this, consider the case in which the two subsystem are not entangled, and hence the state of the system is given by (3.11). In this case, the ensemble (3.22) reduces to the coherent state $|\phi\rangle_{n-1}$. With entangled subsystems, non-selective measurements can cause decoherence. To describe quantum state produced by decoherence, we will need to introduce a new formalism, that of density matrices. This is the subject of the next section.

3.5 Density Matrices

In this section, we introduce density matrices. We first view density matrices as a means to describe a "noisy" ket state. This corresponds to a situation in which there is uncertainty on the ket state, and hence we have an ensemble of ket states as in the example covered in the previous section. Then, we illustrate how a density matrix can be always associated with such a noisy ket state.

3.5.1 Describing Ensemble States as Density Matrices

Consider a general situation in which the state of a quantum system of n qubits is (classically) uncertain among M possible states $\{|\phi_m\rangle\}_{m=0}^{M-1}$, with each state $|\phi_m\rangle$ having probability p_m. The states $\{|\phi_m\rangle\}_{m=0}^{M-1}$ need not be orthogonal. Note that we will henceforth drop the subscript indicating the number of qubits from ket and bra vectors. This setting can be described by the **ensemble state**

$$\{(|\phi_0\rangle, p_0), (|\phi_1\rangle, p_1), ..., (|\phi_{M-1}\rangle, p_{M-1})\}. \tag{3.23}$$

If we have $p_m = 1$ for some $m \in \{0, 1, ..., M-1\}$, we say that we have a **pure, or coherent, state**; otherwise we have a **mixed state**.

The probabilities p_m, also known as **epistemic probabilities**, are conceptually distinct from the squared absolute values of the amplitudes that give the measurement outputs' probabilities for pure quantum states, as they reflect a state of classical uncertainty. This state of uncertainty may reflect ignorance about the way in which the state is prepared, or about the result of a measurement of another subsystem as in the situation studied in the previous section.

Suppose that we make a measurement of the system described by the ensemble state (3.23). For generality, we consider a measurement in some arbitrary orthonormal basis $\{|v_x\rangle\}_{x=0}^{2^n-1}$. Partial measurements can be also similarly studied. How can we describe the probability distribution of the output of the measurement?

If the state of the system is $|\phi_m\rangle$, by Born's rule, the output of the measurement is $x \in \{0,1\}^n$ with probability $|\langle v_x|\phi_m\rangle|^2$. Since, under the ensemble (3.23), the state is given by $|\phi_m\rangle$ with probability p_m, by the law of total probability we have

$$\begin{aligned}\Pr[\text{measurement output equals } x] &= \sum_{m=0}^{M-1} p_m |\langle v_x|\phi_m\rangle|^2 \\ &= \sum_{m=0}^{M-1} p_m \langle v_x|\phi_m\rangle\langle\phi_m|v_x\rangle \\ &= \langle v_x| \left(\underbrace{\sum_{m=0}^{M-1} p_m |\phi_m\rangle\langle\phi_m|}_{\rho} \right) |v_x\rangle,\end{aligned} \tag{3.24}$$

where

$$\rho = \sum_{m=0}^{M-1} p_m |\phi_m\rangle\langle\phi_m| \tag{3.25}$$

is known as the **density matrix** associated with the ensemble state (3.23).

The derivation (3.24) shows that we can describe the probability distribution of measurement outcomes on a noisy quantum system as a

function of the density matrix ρ. The density matrix ρ (3.25) hence fully represents the state of the system (3.23) as it pertains the description of measurable outputs.

By the definition in (3.25), the density matrix satisfies two conditions:

- it is **positive semidefinite**, i.e., it is Hermitian and it has non-negative real eigenvalues;
- it has **unitary trace**, i.e.,

$$\mathrm{tr}(\rho) = 1. \tag{3.26}$$

To validate the second property, we can compute the trace of the density matrix in (3.24) as

$$\begin{aligned}\mathrm{tr}(\rho) &= \sum_{x=0}^{2^n-1} \langle x|\rho|x\rangle = \sum_{x=0}^{2^n-1} \langle x| \left(\underbrace{\sum_{m=0}^{M-1} p_m |\phi_m\rangle\langle\phi_m|}_{\rho} \right) |x\rangle \\ &= \sum_{m=0}^{M-1} p_m \sum_{x=0}^{2^n-1} \langle x|\phi_m\rangle\langle\phi_m|x\rangle = \sum_{m=0}^{M-1} p_m = 1,\end{aligned} \tag{3.27}$$

where the first equality follows from the definition of the trace as the sum of the elements on the diagonal of a square matrix (see also Sec. 3.6.1).

3.5.2 From Density Matrices to Ensemble States

As discussed in the previous subsection, an ensemble state, in which there is epistemic uncertainty about the pure state the system is in, can be described by a density matrix. We now verify that *any* positive semidefinite matrix ρ with unitary trace is a valid density matrix, in the sense that it describes an ensemble state.

The key observation is that any positive semidefinite $2^n \times 2^n$ matrix ρ can be written in terms of its eigendecomposition as

$$\rho = \sum_{x=0}^{2^n-1} p_x |u_x\rangle\langle u_x|, \tag{3.28}$$

where $\{|u_x\rangle\}_{x=0}^{2^n-1}$ is the orthonormal basis of eigenvectors, and the corresponding eigenvalues $\{p_x\}_{x=0}^{2^n-1}$ are non-negative. Furthermore, by the unitary trace condition (3.26) one can directly check (see also Sec. 3.6.1) that we have

$$\mathrm{tr}(\rho) = \sum_{x=0}^{2^n-1} p_x = 1. \tag{3.29}$$

Therefore, comparing (3.28) with (3.25), we conclude that the matrix ρ describes the ensemble state

$$\{(|u_0\rangle, p_0), (|u_1\rangle, p_1), ..., (|u_{2^n-1}\rangle, p_{2^n-1})\}. \tag{3.30}$$

This corresponds to a noisy ket state of the type studied in the previous subsection, in which the system is in pure state $|u_x\rangle$ with probability p_x. Note that, if the some of the eigenvalues are repeated (i.e., if they have multiplicity larger than 1), the decomposition (3.28), and hence the resulting ensemble (3.30), is not unique.

3.5.3 Density Matrix as a General Description of a Quantum State

Density matrices provide a general description of quantum states that includes as special cases pure, i.e., ket, states, as well as random and deterministic cbits. Therefore, one can use a density matrix to specify an arbitrary classical state involving deterministic or random cbits, as well as a pure or mixed quantum state. In other words, density matrices account for epistemic uncertainty, as well as for quantum uncertainty related to the randomness of quantum measurements.

To elaborate on this point, we first observe that a quantum coherent state, described by a ket $|\psi\rangle$, is described by the rank-1 density matrix

$$\rho = |\psi\rangle\langle\psi|. \tag{3.31}$$

More general mixed quantum states, accounting for ensembles of pure states, are described by density matrices with rank larger than 1. An interesting observation is that multiplying the pure state $|\psi\rangle$ by a complex number of the form $\exp(i\theta)$ for some angle θ does not change the corresponding density matrix (3.31). This reflects the fact that, by Born's rule, the global phase of a state $|\psi\rangle$ does not affect the distribution of the output of measurements of state $|\psi\rangle$.

Second, we note that density matrices can also be used to describe classical random cbits, and hence also deterministic cbits. To see this, note that a random cbit taking value 0 with probability p_0 and 1 with probability $p_1 = 1 - p_0$ can be described by the ensemble $\{(|0\rangle, p_0), (|1\rangle, p_1)\}$. By the definition (3.25), this ensemble state is described by the 2×2 diagonal density matrix

$$\rho = p_0|0\rangle\langle 0| + p_1|1\rangle\langle 1| = \begin{bmatrix} p_0 & 0 \\ 0 & p_1 \end{bmatrix}. \tag{3.32}$$

This is a valid density matrix since it is positive semidefinite and it satisfies the condition $\mathrm{tr}(\rho) = p_0 + p_1 = 1$.

More generally, a random n-cbit string with probability vector $p = [p_0, ..., p_{2^n-1}]^\dagger$ is described by the diagonal density matrix

$$\rho = \sum_{x=0}^{2^n-1} p_x|x\rangle\langle x| = \begin{bmatrix} p_0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & p_1 & \ddots & \vdots \\ \vdots & \ddots & \ddots & 0 \\ 0 & \cdots & 0 & p_{2^n-1} \end{bmatrix}, \tag{3.33}$$

which is positive semidefinite and satisfies the condition $\mathrm{tr}(\rho) = \sum_{x=0}^{2^n-1} p_x = 1$.

3.5.4 Evolution and Measurement of Density States

We have seen in the previous subsection that a density matrix ρ provides a general description of quantum (qubit) states. It is, therefore, important to extend the definition of unitary, i.e., closed-system, evolutions and of measurements from pure to density states.

When not measured, density states undergo unitary evolutions for the same reasons explained in Sec. 1.4.1. Generalizing the unitary evolution of a coherent state, given a unitary transformation U and an input density state ρ, the density matrix obtained at the output of the transformation is given as

$$\rho' = U\rho U^\dagger. \tag{3.34}$$

One can directly check that this reduces to the standard unitary evolution of coherent states by considering rank-1 matrices.

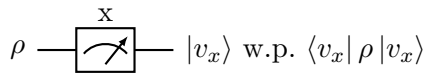


Figure 3.7: Measurement in an arbitrary orthonormal basis $\{|v_x\rangle\}_{x=0}^{2^n-1}$ for a density state ρ.

Let us now turn to measurements. Following (3.24), a von Neumann measurement in the orthonormal basis $\{|v_x\rangle\}_{x=0}^{2^n-1}$ for an n-qubit density state ρ operates as illustrated in Fig. 3.7 and detailed as follows.

- **Born's rule**: The probability of observing $x \in \{0,1\}^n$ is

$$\Pr[\text{measurement output equals } x] = \langle v_x|_n \rho |v_x\rangle; \tag{3.35}$$

- **"Collapse" of the state**: If the measured cbits are given by string $x \in \{0,1\}^n$, the post-measurement state is given by the rank-1 density matrix $|v_x\rangle\langle v_x|$.

The definition of measurement can be extended to account for the partial measurement of n' qubits as defined in Sec. 3.3. We refer the reader to Sec. 5.2 for further discussion on this point in the context of projective measurements.

3.5.5 An Application of Ensemble States: Quantum Encryption

As an application of the formalism of density matrices, consider the problem of **quantum encryption**. In it, we have an encoder, which holds some quantum system in state $|\psi\rangle$, an intended decoder, and, possibly, an eavesdropper. The eavesdropper may intercept the quantum system while in transit between encoder and decoder. The goal of quantum encryption is twofold. First, we would like to encode the quantum state in such a way that the intended decoder can recover it exactly, assuming that the state is not intercepted by the eavesdropper. Second, should the eavesdropper get hold of the quantum system, we would like the eavesdropper to be unable to obtain useful information about the state $|\psi\rangle$ from it.

In a symmetric-key encryption strategy, encoder and decoder share a key $\kappa \in \{0,1,...,K-1\}$, which is randomly selected from the set of

K possible keys. While encoder and decoder know the selected key κ, the eavesdropper must model the key as being a uniformly distributed random variable in the set $\{0, 1, ..., K-1\}$.

The encoder applies a unitary transformation U_κ dependent on the key κ, which is also known to the decoder, to the "plaintext", i.e., to the quantum state to be encrypted, $|\psi\rangle$. From the point of view of the decoder, which knows the key, the resulting state is $U_\kappa|\psi\rangle$. From it, the decoder can readily recover $|\psi\rangle$ by applying the inverse of the unitary U_κ.

In contrast, as far as the eavesdropper is concerned, the encrypted system is the mixed state $\sum_{\kappa=0}^{K-1} U_\kappa|\psi\rangle\langle\psi|U_\kappa^\dagger$, since the key is not available at the eavesdropper. Encryption can be considered as effective if, for any two "plaintexts" $|\psi\rangle$ and $|\psi'\rangle$, the two corresponding encrypted versions $\sum_{\kappa=0}^{K-1} U_\kappa|\psi\rangle\langle\psi|U_\kappa^\dagger$ and $\sum_{\kappa=0}^{K-1} U_\kappa|\psi'\rangle\langle\psi' q\text{`}qzw2|U_\kappa^\dagger$ are hard to distinguish, through measurement, by the eavesdropper (see Sec. 5.7.3 for discussion on quantum state detection).

3.6 Partial Trace

In Sec. 3.4, we have seen that a non-selective partial measurement leaves the subsystem that is not measured in an ensemble state. The previous section has then shown how an ensemble state can be described by a density matrix. In this section, we describe a useful operation – the partial trace – that allows one to derive the density state resulting from a non-selective partial measurement.

3.6.1 Trace as a Linear Operator

Let us start by first reviewing the trace operation $\mathrm{tr}(\cdot)$ by highlighting its operation as a linear function of the input matrix. Recall that the trace returns the sum of the elements on the main diagonal of a square, $N \times N$, matrix. We are interested in values of N that can be written as $N = 2^n$ for some integer n.

To proceed, we need the simple observation that any $N \times N$ square

matrix A can be written as

$$A = \sum_{x=0}^{N-1} \sum_{y=0}^{N-1} [A]_{(x,y)} |x\rangle\langle y|, \tag{3.36}$$

where $[A]_{(x,y)}$ is the (x, y)-th element of the matrix, while $\{|x\rangle\}_{x=0}^{N-1}$ and $\{|y\rangle\}_{x=0}^{N-1}$ are the computational basis vectors. This follows immediately be noting that the outer product $|x\rangle\langle y|$ yields an $N \times N$ matrix with all zero entries except for a 1 in the (x, y)-th entry. Furthermore, the same decomposition – with generally different coefficients, say $[A']_{(x,y)}$ – applies with any choice of the orthonormal basis $\{|v_x\rangle\}_{x=0}^{N-1}$, i.e.,

$$A = \sum_{x=0}^{N-1} \sum_{y=0}^{N-1} [A']_{(x,y)} |v_x\rangle\langle v_y|. \tag{3.37}$$

The trace is a linear operator, and hence, by the decomposition (3.37) it can be equivalently described by its operation on an arbitrary outer product $|v\rangle\langle u|$ of two $N \times 1$ vectors $|v\rangle$ and $u\rangle$. In fact, it is sufficient to specify its operation on the outer products obtained from the vectors of some orthonormal basis.

With the above in mind, we can characterize the trace as the linear operator that acts as follows on outer products of vectors as in

$$\mathrm{tr}(|v\rangle\langle u|) = \langle v|u\rangle. \tag{3.38}$$

In words, the trace "converts" an outer product of vectors into the corresponding inner product. Using this definition, it can be directly verified that the trace can be equivalently written as

$$\mathrm{tr}(\rho) = \sum_{x=0}^{2^n-1} \langle v_x|\rho|v_x\rangle \tag{3.39}$$

for *any* orthonormal basis $\{|v_x\rangle\}_{x=0}^{2^n-1}$. In fact, the operation in (3.39) satisfies (3.38).

3.6.2 Partial Trace via Non-Selective Partial Measurements

Let us return to the motivating setting of a non-selective partial measurement by focusing on the system of n cbits in a general pure state

as studied in Sec. 3.3.4. We measure the first set of n' qubits in some basis $\{|v_x\rangle_{n'}\}_{n'=0}^{2^{n'}-1}$. As illustrated in Fig. 3.6, we refer to the measured subsystem of n' qubits as A and to the rest of the $n - n'$ qubits as subsystem B.

Following the discussion in Sec. 3.3, we can always write the joint state as (cf. (3.8))

$$|\psi\rangle_{AB} = \sum_{x=0}^{2^{n'}-1} \alpha_x |v_x\rangle_A |\phi_x\rangle_B, \tag{3.40}$$

where $\{|\phi_x\rangle_B\}_{x=0}^{2^{n'}-1}$ are states for subsystem B (generally not orthogonal). Note that in (3.40), we have used the subscripts to indicate the subsystem corresponding to each state. This notation will turn out to be more convenient here.

The density matrix for subsystem B upon a non-selective measurement of subsystem A is given as (3.25), i.e.,

$$\rho_B = \sum_{x=0}^{2^{n'}-1} |\alpha_x|^2 |\phi_x\rangle_B \langle\phi_x|_B. \tag{3.41}$$

Note again the use of the subscript in ρ_B to emphasize the identity of the subsystem corresponding to the given quantum state. How can we express the relationship between the density state ρ_B and the original density state $\rho_{AB} = |\psi\rangle_{AB}\langle\psi|_{AB}$ of the overall system?

A convenient way to do this is by means of an operation that generalizes the trace (3.39): the partial trace. The **partial trace** of the density ρ_{AB} over subsystem A – i.e., over the system being measured and discarded – is defined as

$$\begin{aligned} \rho_B &= \mathrm{tr}_A(\rho_{AB}) \\ &= \sum_{x=0}^{2^{n'}-1} (\langle v_x|_A \otimes I_B)\rho_{AB}(|v_x\rangle_A \otimes I_B), \end{aligned} \tag{3.42}$$

where I_B is the $2^{n-n'} \times 2^{n-n'}$ identity matrix. Note that the subscript in $\mathrm{tr}_A(\cdot)$ indicates which system is being "traced over". The equality between the partial trace output (3.42) and the density matrix (3.41)

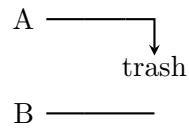


Figure 3.8: Since the density state of subsystem B in the situation depicted in Fig. 3.8 does not depend on the specific measurement made on subsystem A, one can illustrate the setting from the perspective of subsystem B as in this figure by removing the specification of a measurement on subsystem A.

can be directly checked by plugging $\rho_{AB} = |\psi\rangle_{AB}\langle\psi|_{AB}$ with (3.40) into (3.42).

By comparison with (3.39), the trace corresponds to a partial trace applied to the entire system, i.e., to the case $n = n'$. Importantly, the partial trace over a subsystem A of n' qubits returns a density of size $2^{n-n'} \times 2^{n-n'}$ over $n - n'$ qubits, while the trace produces a scalar (i.e., a 1×1 matrix). As for the trace, the choice of the orthonormal basis $\{|v_x\rangle_A\}_{x=0}^{2^{n'}-1}$ is immaterial in the definition of the partial trace (3.42). That is, the output of the partial trace operation is the same irrespective of the choice of the orthonormal basis for subsystem A.

Interpreting this last result in terms of partial non-selective measurements, we conclude that the state of subsystem B when subsystem A is measured in a non-selective fashion does not depend on the specific basis in which subsystem A is measured. Therefore, from the perspective of subsystem B, the situation in Fig. 3.6 can be also illustrated as in Fig. 3.8 by removing the specification of a measurement on subsystem A. (The fact that any unterminated wire in a quantum circuit can be terminated with a measurement is known as the *principle of implicit measurement*.)

Some further discussion on the implications of entanglement on the output of non-selective measurements can be found in Appendix A.

3.6.3 Partial Trace as a Linear Operator

Like the trace, the partial trace operation (3.42) is also linear. We will now generalize the definition of the trace given in (3.38), which relies on the linearity of the trace, to the partial trace.

From (3.37), it follows that any matrix square $2^n \times 2^n$ matrix can be expressed as a linear combination of matrices for the form

$$|v,u\rangle_{AB}\langle v',u'|_{AB} = |v\rangle_A\langle v'|_A \otimes |u\rangle_B\langle u'|_B, \tag{3.43}$$

where $|v\rangle_A$ and $|v'\rangle_A$ states for subsystem A, and $|u\rangle_B$ and $|u'\rangle_B$ are states for subsystem B. The partial trace can be hence equivalently described, generalizing the trace definition (3.38), as the linear operator satisfying the equalities

$$\begin{aligned} \mathrm{tr}_A(|v,u\rangle_{AB}\langle v',u'|_{AB}) &= \mathrm{tr}_A(|v\rangle_A\langle v'|_A \otimes |u\rangle_B\langle u'|_B) \\ &= \mathrm{tr}(|v\rangle_A\langle v'|_A) \cdot |u\rangle_B\langle u'|_B \\ &= \langle v|_A|v'\rangle_A \cdot |u\rangle_B\langle u'|_B. \end{aligned} \tag{3.44}$$

In words, the partial trace "converts" outer products into inner products only for the system that is being traced over, namely subsystem A.

The equivalent definitions (3.42) and (3.44) can be directly generalized to the partial measurement of any subset of qubits in a system. Accordingly, one can straightforwardly extend the partial trace operation to trace over any subset of qubits.

3.6.4 Partial Trace and Classical Marginalization

The partial trace can be also interpreted as a form of "quantum marginalization". To explain, consider a set of $n = 2$ random cbits with general probability vector $p = [p_{00}, p_{01}, p_{10}, p_{11}]^\dagger$. This state can be described by the density matrix

$$\begin{aligned} \rho_{AB} &= \begin{bmatrix} p_{00} & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & p_{01} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & p_{10} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & p_{11} \end{bmatrix} \\ &= p_{00}|00\rangle\langle 00| + p_{01}|01\rangle\langle 01| + p_{10}|10\rangle\langle 10| + p_{11}|11\rangle\langle 11|. \end{aligned} \tag{3.45}$$

By (3.44), the partial trace over subsystem A, i.e., over the first qubit (encoding the first cbit), returns

$$\begin{aligned} \rho_B &= \mathrm{tr}_A(\rho_{AB}) = p_{00}|0\rangle\langle 0| + p_{10}|0\rangle\langle 0| + p_{01}|1\rangle\langle 1| + p_{11}|1\rangle\langle 1| \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} p_{00}+p_{10} & 0 \\ 0 & p_{01}+p_{11} \end{bmatrix}. \end{aligned} \tag{3.46}$$

This is the density matrix to a random cbit with distribution equal to the marginal distribution of the second cbit. So, as anticipated, the partial trace generalizes the operation of classical marginalization.

3.7 Conclusions

In this chapter, we have generalized the quantum measurements in two important directions. First, we have defined measurements in any orthonormal basis, which encompass joint measurements across multiple qubits. We have seen that such measurements can be implemented via standard measurements (in the computational basis) via suitable pre- and post-measurement unitary operations. Then, we have discussed situations in which only a subset of qubits is measured, and the output of the measurement is either retained or discarded. In the latter case, we have concluded that, if there is entanglement between the qubits being measured and the rest of the system, the state of the subsystem that is not subject to measurement must be described by a density matrix. The density matrix of the remaining subsystem can be related to the original density matrix via the partial trace operation.

3.8 Recommended Resources

For a basic introduction to partial measurements, the reader is referred to [1]. Non-selective measurements and quantum noise are clearly presented in [3], [7], [8]. For discussions on the implementations of measurements using quantum circuits, a useful reference is [9].

3.9 Problems

1. For a two-qubit system show that measuring qubits sequentially in the computational basis gives the same distribution of the outputs as a joint measurement in the computational basis. Generalize to any number of qubits.

2. Describe mixed states as vectors within the Bloch sphere (see recommended resources).

3. Describe the von Neumann entropy and show that for entangled states the entropy of a whole can be smaller than the entropy of individual subsystems (see recommended resources).

4. Contrast the coherent superpositon

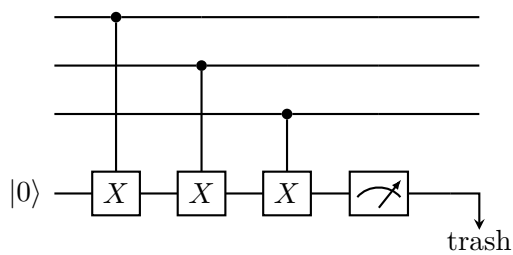
$$\sum_x \alpha_x |\psi_x\rangle \tag{3.47}$$

with the non-coherent superposition

$$\sum_x p_x |\psi_x\rangle\langle\psi_x| \tag{3.48}$$

by demonstrating quantum circuits in which these two states as inputs yield different measurement probabilities. Argue that for the former state the relative phases between the component states $|\psi_x\rangle$ matter, while that is not the case for the latter.

5. For the circuit below, describe the state of the first three qubits when a measurement on the ancilla (last) qubit is discarded. Note that the ancilla qubit is initialize in the ground state $|0\rangle$. Consider first the eight vectors in the computational basis for the first three qubits, and then describe what happens to an arbitrary superposition state for the first three qubits. Relate your conclusions to the concept of parity (see also Chapter 5).



Appendix A: Quantifying Bipartite Entanglement

In this appendix, we focus on bipartite pure states $|\psi\rangle_{AB}$ of n qubits that are partitioned into a subsystem A encompassing n_A qubits and a subsystem B including $n_B = n - n_A$ qubits (see Sec. 3.6.2). We describe two ways of quantifying entanglement of the two systems, namely the Schmidt rank and the entropy of entanglement.

Schmidt Decomposition and Schmidt Rank

Any pure state $|\psi\rangle_{AB}$ can be expressed as

$$\begin{aligned}|\psi\rangle_{AB} &= \sum_{x=0}^{2^{n_A}-1}\sum_{y=0}^{2^{n_B}-1} \alpha_{x,y}|x\rangle_A \otimes |y\rangle_B \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} \alpha_{0,0} & \cdots & \alpha_{0,2^{n_B}-1} & \cdots & \alpha_{2^{n_A}-1,0} & \cdots & \alpha_{2^{n_A}-1,2^{n_B}-1} \end{bmatrix}^T,\end{aligned} \tag{3.49}$$

where $\{|x\rangle_A\}_{x=0}^{2^{n_A}-1}$ and $\{|y\rangle_B\}_{x=0}^{2^{n_B}-1}$ are the computational bases for subsystems A and B. Therefore, we can write the state as

$$|\psi\rangle_{AB} = \text{vec}(\Omega_{AB}) \tag{3.50}$$

with $2^{n_B} \times 2^{n_A}$ **amplitude matrix**

$$\Omega_{AB} = \begin{bmatrix} \alpha_{0,0} & \alpha_{1,0} & \cdots & \alpha_{2^{n_A}-1,0} \\ \alpha_{0,1} & \alpha_{1,1} & \cdots & \alpha_{2^{n_A}-1,1} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots \\ \alpha_{0,2^{n_B}-1} & \alpha_{1,2^{n_B}-1} & \cdots & \alpha_{2^{n_A}-1,2^{n_B}-1} \end{bmatrix}, \tag{3.51}$$

where the operator $\text{vec}(\cdot)$ stacks the columns of the argument matrix. The amplitude matrix (3.51) provides an equivalent characterization of the state $|\psi\rangle_{AB}$ that highlights the assumed partition into the subsystems A and B.

Consider now the singular value decomposition (SVD) of the amplitude matrix

$$\Omega_{AB} = \sum_{d=0}^{r-1} \lambda_d |u_d\rangle_B \langle v_d|_A, \tag{3.52}$$

where the sets $\{|v_d\rangle_A\}_{d=0}^{r-1}$ and $\{|u_d\rangle_B\}_{d=0}^{r-1}$ comprise the right and left singular vectors, respectively, associated with the r positive singular values $\{\lambda_d\}_{d=0}^{r-1}$. Recall that the $2^{n_A} \times 1$ vectors $\{|v_d\rangle_A\}_{d=0}^{r-1}$ are orthonormal, and so are the $2^{n_B} \times 1$ vectors $\{|u_d\rangle_B\}_{d=0}^{r-1}$. Furthermore, the number of positive singular values r satisfies the inequality

$$r \leq \min(2^{n_A}, 2^{n_B}). \tag{3.53}$$

Using the SVD (3.52), we then have

$$|\psi\rangle_{AB} = \text{vec}(\Omega_{AB}) = \sum_{d=0}^{r-1} \lambda_d |v_d\rangle_A^* \otimes |u_d\rangle_B, \tag{3.54}$$

where $|v_d\rangle_A^*$ represents the complex conjugate of vector $|v_d\rangle_A$. Note that the vectors $\{|v_d\rangle_A^*\}_{d=0}^{r-1}$ are still orthonormal. This is known as the Schmidt decomposition of state $|\psi\rangle_{AB}$, as it pertains its partition into systems A and B, and the Schmidt rank is the number r of positive singular values.

Overall, the **Schmidt decomposition** says that there exists an orthonormal set of r vectors $\{|a_d\rangle_A\}_{d=0}^{r-1}$ of dimension $2^{n_A} \times 1$ – with $|a_d\rangle_A = |v_d\rangle_A^*$ in the derivation above – as well as an orthonormal set of r vectors $\{|b_d\rangle_B\}_{d=0}^{r-1}$ of dimension $2^{n_B} \times 1$ – with $|b_d\rangle_B = |u_d\rangle_B$ – such that the state can be expressed as the linear combination

$$|\psi\rangle_{AB} = \sum_{d=0}^{r-1} \lambda_d |a_d\rangle_A \otimes |b_d\rangle_B \tag{3.55}$$

of r separable states $\{|a_d\rangle_A \otimes |b_d\rangle_B\}_{d=0}^{r-1}$ with positive amplitudes $\{\lambda_d\}_{d=0}^{r-1}$ satisfying the normalization condition

$$\sum_{d=0}^{r-1} \lambda_d^2 = 1. \tag{3.56}$$

An interesting aspect of the Schmidt decomposition is that if one of the two systems comprises a small number of qubits, the Schmidt rank r is accordingly small due to the inequality (3.53). Another useful property of the Schmidt decomposition has to do with the quantification of entanglement between subsystems A and B.

It can be proved that the two subsystems A and B are entangled if and only if the Schmidt rank r of state $|\psi\rangle_{AB}$ is larger than 1. Note that, if $r = 1$, by (3.55), the state $|\psi\rangle_{AB} = |a_0\rangle_A \otimes |b_0\rangle_B$ of the two subsystems is indeed separable. Therefore, the Schmidt rank r can be be used to assess the degree of entanglement between the two systems.

The significance of the Schmidt rank can also be understood by studying the setting shown in Sec. 3.6.2) in which one of the two

subsystems is discarded. From (3.55), if we make a measurement of subsystem A in a non-selective way, we obtain the density matrix

$$\rho_B = \mathrm{tr}_A(|\psi\rangle_{AB}\langle\psi|_{AB}) = \sum_{d=0}^{r-1} \lambda_d^2 |b_d\rangle_B \langle b_d|_B, \tag{3.57}$$

while measuring subsystem B in a non-selective way yields

$$\rho_A = \mathrm{tr}_B(|\psi\rangle_{AB}\langle\psi|_{AB}) = \sum_{d=0}^{r-1} \lambda_d^2 |a_d\rangle_A \langle a_d|_A. \tag{3.58}$$

Therefore, the Schmidt rank corresponds to the rank of the density matrices of the two subsystems when the other subsystem is discarded. Accordingly, if the two systems are not entangled, the density matrices describe pure states, i.e., they have rank $r = 1$; while entanglement is manifested in both subsystems having mixed states with rank $r > 1$.

Entropy of Entanglement

As we have seen in the previous subsection, entanglement between two subsystems causes non-selective measurements of one subsystem to yield a (non-trivial) mixed, and hence noisy, state for the other subsystem. From this perspective, entanglement can be more precisely quantified by the degree of classical randomness of the reduced states (3.57) and (3.58). Informally, the more random the reduced states ρ_A and ρ_B are, the more entangled the original pure state $|\psi\rangle_{AB}$ is.

To quantify the classical randomness associated with a density state, a standard measure is given by the **von Neumann entropy**. Given a density state ρ with eigendecomposition $\rho = \sum_{x=0}^{r-1} p_x |u_x\rangle\langle u_x|$, the von Neumann entropy is the classical, Shannon, entropy of the probability vector $[p_0, p_1, ..., p_{r-1}]$, i.e.,

$$H(\rho) = -\sum_{x=0}^{r-1} p_x \log_2(p_x), \tag{3.59}$$

which is measured in bits. For a system of n qubits, the von Neumann entropy satisfies the inequalities

$$0 \leq H(\rho) \leq n, \tag{3.60}$$

being equal to zero if and only if the state ρ is pure (i.e., with rank 1).

Returning to the density states (3.57) and (3.58), their von Neumann entropy is equal to

$$H(\rho_A) = H(\rho_B) = -\sum_{x=0}^{r-1} \lambda_x^2 \log_2(\lambda_x^2). \tag{3.61}$$

By the discussion in the previous subsection, the von Neumann entropy of the reduced states is hence equal to zero if and only if the state $|\psi\rangle_{AB}$ is separable. Furthermore, it is positive if and only if the state $|\psi\rangle_{AB}$ is entangled, and thus the Schmidt rank is larger than 1. Finally, by (3.60), the maximum value of the von Neumann entropy for the reduced states is $\min(n_A, n_B)$, which corresponds to a **maximally entangled** state.

In light of the properties described in the last paragraph, given a pure bipartite state $|\psi\rangle_{AB}$, the von Neumann entropy of the reduced states, i.e.,

$$H(\mathrm{tr}_A(|\psi\rangle_{AB}\langle\psi|_{AB})) = H(\mathrm{tr}_B(|\psi\rangle_{AB}\langle\psi|_{AB})) \tag{3.62}$$

is known as the **entropy of entanglement** of the state $|\psi\rangle_{AB}$. The entropy of entanglement is zero if and only if the two subsystems A and B are not entangled, and it reaches the maximum value of $\min(n_A, n_B)$ when the two subsystems are maximally entangled. For example, any Bell state can be checked to have the maximum entropy of entanglement of $\min(n_A, n_B) = 1$ bit. Therefore, Bell pairs are maximally entangled.

As a final note, we observe that, when the two subsystems are entangled, the von Neumann entropy (3.61) of the subsystems is larger than the von Neumann entropy of the overall system $H(|\psi\rangle_{AB}\langle\psi|_{AB}) = 0$ – a phenomenon that has no classical counterpart.

Appendix B: On Multipartite Entanglement

In this Appendix, we briefly discuss entanglement involving more than two subsystems. We specifically elaborate on the case of $n = 3$ qubits, each corresponding to a distinct subsystem. As we have seen in Appendix A, with two subsystems, entanglement can be readily quantified by the Schmidt rank or by the entropy of entanglement. As we will see here,

multipartite entanglement exhibits a more complex behavior that is not as easily quantified. Multipartite entanglement is central to many quantum computing and communication primitives, such as on-demand Bell state generation between pairs of nodes.

For $n = 3$, there are two main types of entanglement, which are exemplified by the **Greenberger–Horne–Zeilinger (GHZ) state**

$$|\text{GHZ}\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|000\rangle + |111\rangle) \tag{3.63}$$

and by the **W state** (named after Wolfgang D$'$ur)

$$|\text{W}\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}(|001\rangle + |010\rangle + |100\rangle). \tag{3.64}$$

Note that the GHZ is a natural generalization of the Bell state $|\Phi^+\rangle = 1/\sqrt{2}(|00\rangle + |11\rangle)$ from $n = 2$ to $n = 3$ qubits; while the W state is a natural generalization of the Bell state $|\Psi^+\rangle = 1/\sqrt{2}(|01\rangle + |10\rangle)$ from $n = 2$ to $n = 3$ qubits.

The three qubits are entangled under both GHZ and W states, since the respective state vectors cannot be written as the Kronecker product of individual qubit states. More precisely, they are *fully* entangled in the sense that they are not even *biseparable*. A biseparable state can be partitioned into two subsystems such that the Kronecker product of the individual subsystems' states gives the overall state of the system.

To elaborate on the different behaviors exhibited by systems in the GHZ and W states, let us consider what happens if we observe one of the three qubits, say the first, and we are interested in the resulting state of the other two qubits. We specifically focus on non-selective measurements as described in Sec. 3.6.2 and also considered in Appendix A. By the generalized Born rule (3.18)-(3.19), for the GHZ state, a non-selective measurement of the first qubit yields the ensemble state

$$\{(|00\rangle, 1/2), (|11\rangle, 1/2)\} \tag{3.65}$$

for the last two qubits. This ensemble is described by the density matrix

$$\rho = \frac{1}{2}|00\rangle\langle 00| + \frac{1}{2}|11\rangle\langle 11| = \frac{1}{2}I. \tag{3.66}$$

We conclude that the two remaining qubits are no longer entangled. Rather, they behave like classical correlated cbits: With probability 1/2 they take state $|00\rangle$, and with probability 1/2 their state is $|11\rangle$. So, in a manner similar to the Bell states for $n = 2$ qubits, the measurement of a single qubit destroys entanglement.

Let us now consider the W state. In order to apply the generalized Born rule, we rewrite (3.64) equivalently as

$$|\mathrm{W}\rangle = \sqrt{\frac{2}{3}}|0\rangle|\Psi^+\rangle + \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}|1\rangle|00\rangle, \tag{3.67}$$

where $|\Psi^+\rangle = 1/\sqrt{2}(|01\rangle + |10\rangle)$.Therefore, following the same steps used above for the GHZ state, upon measuring the first qubit in a non-selective way, the last two qubits are in the mixed state

$$\rho = \frac{2}{3}|\Psi^+\rangle\langle\Psi^+| + \frac{1}{3}|00\rangle\langle 00|. \tag{3.68}$$

It follows that the two qubits are still partially entangled, albeit not maximally so. In fact, with probability 2/3 they are in the (maximally entangled) Bell state $|\Psi^+\rangle$, while with probability 1/3 they are in the separable state $|00\rangle$.

Overall, the discussion in this appendix suggests that GHZ states exhibit a larger degree of entanglement, which is, however, completely lost upon the measurement of any of the three qubits. In contrast, the "connectivity" among the three qubits under the W state is less strong, as the measurement of one qubit preserves some degree of entanglement between the other two qubits. That said, the two types of entanglement are distinct in the sense that it is not possible to transform either state into the other via local operations (see also Problem 1 in Chapter 2 for the case $n = 2$).

Appendix C: More on Density Matrices and on the Partial Trace

This appendix reports some useful additional facts about density matrices and partial trace.

As we have seen in Sec. 1.4.4, the notation $f(\rho)$ describes the matrix

$$f(\rho) = \sum_{x=0}^{2^n-1} f(p_x)|u_x\rangle\langle u_x|, \tag{3.69}$$

where we have used the eigendecomposition (3.28). and this definition extends more generally to all normal operators. Using this definition, a pure state can be readily seen to satisfy the equality

$$\mathrm{tr}(\rho^2) = 1, \tag{3.70}$$

while, more generally, we have the inequalities

$$1/2^n \leq \mathrm{tr}(\rho^2) \leq 1. \tag{3.71}$$

The quantity $\mathrm{tr}(\rho^2)$, known as **purity**, decreases with the "mixedness" of the state.

Following Sec. 1.4.6, for a single qubit, the density matrix can also be represented using the Pauli operators as

$$\rho = \frac{1}{2}(I + r_x X + r_y Y + r_z Z), \tag{3.72}$$

where the coefficients are computed as $r_x = \mathrm{tr}(\rho X)$, $r_y = \mathrm{tr}(\rho Y)$, and $r_z = \mathrm{tr}(\rho Z)$. Furthermore, the so-called Bloch vector $r = [r_x, r_y, r_z]^T$ can be shown to satisfy the inequality $||r|| \leq 1$ and the two eigenvalues can be computed as $1/2(1 \pm ||r||_2)$.

If we write the joint density matrix of a system of two qubits ($n = 2$) in the block form

$$\rho_{AB} = \begin{bmatrix} P & Q \\ R & S \end{bmatrix} \tag{3.73}$$

where the size of P is 2×2 and the size of S is 2×2, respectively, then we have

$$\mathrm{tr}_A(\rho_{AB}) = P + S \tag{3.74}$$

and

$$\mathrm{tr}_B(\rho_{AB}) = \begin{bmatrix} \mathrm{tr}(P) & \mathrm{tr}(Q) \\ \mathrm{tr}(R) & \mathrm{tr}(S) \end{bmatrix}. \tag{3.75}$$

4

Quantum Computing

4.1 Introduction

This chapter introduces gate-based quantum computing, the prevailing model for quantum algorithms. To this end, after providing a definition of gate-based quantum computing, we study Deutsch's algorithm, the first demonstration of the benefits of quantum computation. Then, we discuss the no cloning theorem, which imposes fundamental limitations on quantum computing (as well as quantum communications). Along the way, we will present several key concepts such as quantum parallelism, basis-copying circuits, and phase kick-back.

4.2 Gate-Based Model of Quantum Computation

A gate-based quantum algorithm consists of a sequence of quantum gates (unitaries), measurements, as well as quantum gates controlled by the output of measurements, that are applied *in place* to a set of qubits.

An example is shown in Fig. 4.1. In it, we have a sequence of standard quantum gates U_m with $m \in \{1, ..., 7\}$, acting on one or two qubits. The cbit at the output of the measurement on the third qubits controls the

gate U_8 applied to the second qubit. Note that *double lines* in quantum circuits represent a wire that carries cbits, such as the cbits obtained as a result of a preceding measurement. For instance, in Fig. 4.1, the gate U_8 may be the identity I if the controlling cbit is equal to 0 and an X gate if the cbit is equal to 1. It is recalled that measurements are irreversible operations, and hence the outlined operation is different from a controlled gate as defined in Sec. 2.6.4, which is reversible. (That said, it can be proved that all measurements can be always moved to the end of the circuit by replacing measurement-controlled gates with controlled gates – this is the so-called *principle of deferred measurement*.) We will see a use of measurement-controlled unitaries in the next chapter in the context of quantum error correction (see Sec. 5.5). Finally, the output of the computation is given by the result of the measurement of the first two qubits.

Elaborating further on the example of Fig. 4.1, the output of a quantum algorithm can be defined in one of two ways.

- **Probabilistic quantum computing**: The quantum algorithm returns a measurement output obtained from a *single run* of the quantum circuit. Due to **shot noise**, i.e., to the inherent randomness of quantum measurements, the output is generally random.

- **Deterministic quantum computing**: The quantum algorithm returns the average of several measurement outputs that are obtained from *multiple runs* of the quantum circuit. This type of output is typically formulated in terms of expected values of observables, which will be introduced in the next chapter (see Sec. 5.3).

4.3 Controlled Shift Operators and Quantum RAM

Having introduced the general model of gate-based quantum computing, in this section we describe two useful building blocks for quantum algorithms: the controlled shift operator and the quantum random-access memory (RAM).

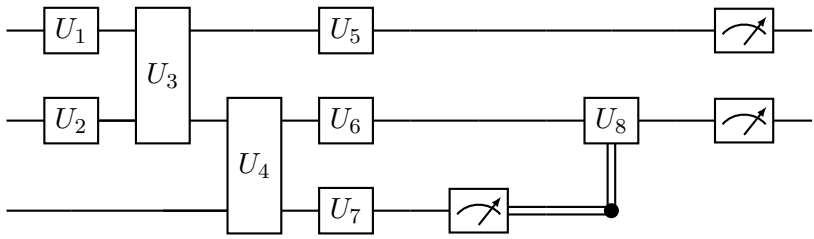


Figure 4.1: An illustration of the gate-based model of quantum computing.

4.3.1 Shift Operators

Given a binary string $a = a_0, ..., a_{m-1} \in \{0,1\}^m$, the **shift operator** $X^{\otimes a}$ is a separable quantum gate that applies either the identity gate I or the NOT gate (also known as Pauli X gate) X to each k-th qubit, with $k \in \{0, ..., m-1\}$. Specifically, the Pauli X gate is applied to qubit k if the corresponding cbit a_k equals $a_k = 1$, and no operation is applied to qubit k if $a_k = 0$. Accordingly, as illustrated in Fig. 4.2, the shift operator $X^{\otimes a}$ with shift cbit string a can be expressed as the Kronecker product

$$X^{\otimes a} = X^{a_0} \otimes X^{a_1} \otimes \cdots \otimes X^{a_{m-1}}. \tag{4.1}$$

Note that the shift operator $X^{\otimes a}$ is a Pauli string (see Sec. 2.6.1).

As an example, with $m = 2$ qubits and the shift bit string $a = 01$, the shift operator is given as

$$X^{\otimes 01} = I \otimes X. \tag{4.2}$$

The name "shift" operator arises from the change-of-basis form of the unitary (4.1). To describe this interpretation, for two binary strings $a = a_0, ..., a_{m-1} \in \{0,1\}^m$ and $b = b_0, ..., b_{m-1} \in \{0,1\}^m$, we write as $a \oplus b$ the m-cbit string obtained as the bit-wise XOR of the cbit strings a and b, i.e.,

$$a \oplus b = a_0 \oplus b_0, ..., a_{m-1} \oplus b_{m-1}. \tag{4.3}$$

Following the characterization of unitary matrices in Sec. 2.6.2, we can then express the shift operator (4.1) as

$$X^{\otimes a} = \sum_{y=0}^{2^m-1} |y \oplus a\rangle\langle y|. \tag{4.4}$$

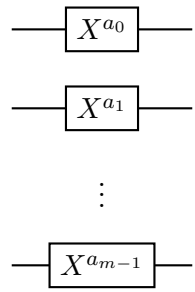


Figure 4.2: The shift operator $X^{\otimes a}$ on m qubits, defined in (4.1) or equivalently in (4.4), is a Pauli string that applies single-qubit Pauli X gates or the identity I in a manner controlled by the cbit string $a = a_0, ..., a_{m-1} \in \{0,1\}^m$ as in (4.1).

Accordingly, the shift operator maps each vector $|y\rangle$ in the computational basis to a "shifted" version $|y \oplus a\rangle$. This can be readily verified by applying (4.1) to a vector $|y\rangle$ in the computational basis, which yields

$$X^{\otimes a}|y\rangle = |y \oplus a\rangle. \tag{4.5}$$

As an example, the shift operator (4.2) can be expressed in the change-of-basis form

$$X^{\otimes 01} = |01\rangle\langle 00| + |00\rangle\langle 01| + |11\rangle\langle 10| + |10\rangle\langle 11|. \tag{4.6}$$

4.3.2 Controlled Shift Operators

Consider now a partition of the set of qubits into two subsystems, with n qubits in the first subsystem and m in the second subsystem. In this subsection, we will introduce the controlled shift operator, in which the first set of qubits determines, in a sense to be specified below, the shift to be applied to the second set of qubits.

To start, let us study the effect of applying the shift operator $X^{\otimes a}$ to the second subsystem of m qubits within the larger system encompassing also the first n qubits. This operation amounts to the application of the unitary $I \otimes X^{\otimes a}$, with the identity matrix I being of size $2^n \times 2^n$, i.e., to the transformation

$$(I \otimes X^{\otimes a})|x, y\rangle = |x, y \oplus a\rangle, \tag{4.7}$$

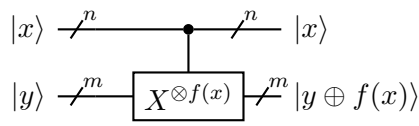


Figure 4.3: The controlled shift operator $CX^{\otimes f}$ is a controlled qubit gate in which the first m qubits control the shift operator $X^{\otimes f(x)}$ applied to last n qubits.

where $\{|x\rangle\}_{x=0}^{2^n-1}$ and $\{|y\rangle\}_{y=0}^{2^m-1}$ are the computational bases for the Hilbert spaces of the two subsystems. In a manner similar to (4.1) and (4.4), we can write the unitary matrix (4.7) as

$$I \otimes X^{\otimes a} = \sum_{x=0}^{2^n-1} \sum_{y=0}^{2^m-1} |x, y \oplus a\rangle\langle x, y|, \tag{4.8}$$

where I is the $2^n \times 2^n$ identity matrix.

Consider now a **binary function**

$$f(x) = f_0(x), ..., f_{m-1}(x) \in \{0,1\}^m \tag{4.9}$$

taking as input the n-cbit string $x \in \{0,1\}^n$ and producing as output the m-cbit string $f(x)$. Given a binary function $f(\cdot)$, the **controlled shift operator** is the unitary transformation

$$CX^{\otimes f} = \sum_{x=0}^{2^n-1} |x\rangle\langle x| \otimes (X^{f_0(x)} \otimes \cdots \otimes X^{f_{m-1}(x)}). \tag{4.10}$$

In a manner that directly extends the discussion about two-qubit controlled gates in Sec. 2.6.4, if the first subset of qubits is in some state $|x\rangle$, the effect of the unitary $CX^{\otimes f}$ is to apply the shift operator $X^{\otimes f(x)}$ to the second set of qubits. More generally, the unitary operates on 2^n separate computational branches, applying the shift operator $X^{\otimes f(x)}$ in the computational branch in which the first subset of n qubits assumes state $|x\rangle$. Note that, unlike the simpler controlled qubit gates studied in Sec. 2.6.4, here a different non-trivial transformation may be applied on all computational branches.

The unitary $CX^{\otimes f}$ generally depends on all the values of the function $f(\cdot)$. Furthermore, it recovers the (two-qubit) CNOT gate by setting $m = n = 1$ and $f(x) = x$ for $x \in \{0,1\}$. As such, unlike the shift operator $X^{\otimes a}$, which is separable across the qubits, the controlled shift applies jointly to all qubits, and can create entanglement (see Sec. 2.7).

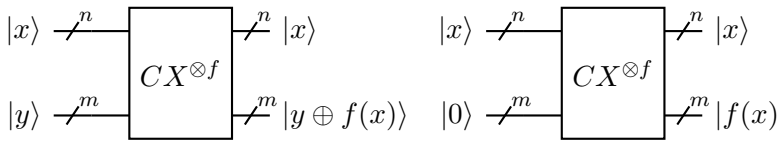


Figure 4.4: (left) Illustration of the operation of the controlled shift operator $CX^{\otimes f}$ on an arbitrary vector $|x, y\rangle$ in the computational basis; (right) Illustration of the use of the controlled shift operator to compute function $f(x)$ for some input $x \in \{0,1\}^n$, with the input x being encoded in the state of the first subsystem of n qubits and the output $f(x) \in \{0,1\}^m$ being encoded in the state of the second subsystem of m qubits.

4.3.3 Computing a Binary Function

In this subsection, we show how to use the controlled shift operator $CX^{\otimes f}$ to evaluate the function $f(\cdot)$ as illustrated in Fig. 4.4. To this end, we observe, in a manner similar to (4.7), that the unitary $CX^{\otimes f}$ maps any vector $|x, y\rangle$ to vector $|x, y \oplus f(x)\rangle$, where $\{|x\rangle\}_{x=0}^{2^n-1}$ and $\{|y\rangle\}_{y=0}^{2^m-1}$ are the computational bases for the Hilbert spaces of the two subsystems, that is, we have

$$CX^{\otimes f}|x, y\rangle = |x, y \oplus f(x)\rangle, \tag{4.11}$$

. Accordingly, the controlled shift operator can be expressed in the change-of-basis form

$$CX^{\otimes f} = \sum_{x=0}^{2^n-1} \sum_{y=0}^{2^m-1} |x, y \oplus f(x)\rangle\langle x, y|, \tag{4.12}$$

as illustrated in Fig. 4.4-(left).

The controlled shift operator can be used to compute function $f(x)$ using the approach depicted in Fig. 4.4-(right). In it, one sets the first set of n qubits to state $|x\rangle$ for the given bit string x of interest. This can be done starting from the ground state $|0\rangle$ by applying an X gate to all qubits corresponding to values 1 in the cbit string x. The second set of m qubits is initialized in state $|0\rangle$. From (4.11), the output is given by a separable state in which the first set of qubits is in state $|x\rangle$, while the second set of qubits is in state $|f(x)\rangle$. One can then measure the output qubits, i.e., the second set of qubits in order to determine the m-cbit string $f(x)$ with certainty.

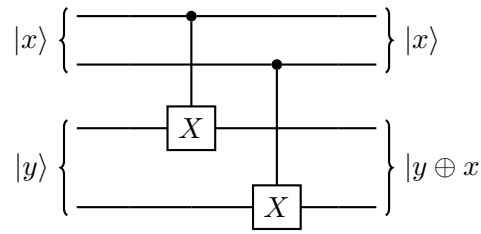


Figure 4.5: An implementation of the controlled shift operator $CX^{\otimes f}$ with $m = n = 2$ and $f(x) = x$.

As an example, for $m = n = 2$ and given the identity function $f(x) = x$, the circuit implementing the unitary $CX^{\otimes f}$ is illustrated in Fig. 4.5. This follows directly from the characterization in (4.10). In fact, as shown in the figure, when applied to vectors $|x, y\rangle$ in the computational basis, the two CNOT gates compute the XOR between the states of the first qubit and of the third and between the second and fourth qubits' states, producing the desired output $|x, y \oplus x\rangle$. Furthermore, if the input state is such that the controlling set of qubits are in a superposition state, i.e., $(\sum_{x=0}^{2^n-1} |x\rangle) \otimes |y\rangle$, the output is given by the superposition $\sum_{x=0}^{2^n-1} |x\rangle \otimes |y \oplus x\rangle$. Importantly, the output state is generally no longer separable across the two subsystems. We will return to this example in Sec. 4.8 in which we will interpret the algorithm in Fig. 4.5 as a *basis-copying circuit*.

4.3.4 Quantum Random Access Memory (QRAM)

Controlled shift operators can be used to implement a **quantum random access memory (QRAM)**. In this application, we view $x \in \{0, 1, ..., 2^n - 1\}$ as an index pointing to an entry $f(x)$ in a data base $\{f(0), f(1), ..., f(2^n - 1)\}$ of m-cbit strings. A standard RAM can only be queried at one index value x at a time, returning a single value $f(x)$ from the data base. In contrast, following the arguments in the previous subsection, querying the QRAM with an input in superposition retrieves a superposition of all entries in the data base.

To elaborate on this point, consider the situation in Fig. 4.6, in which the input state for the first n qubits is the superposition $\sum_{x=0}^{2^n-1} \alpha_x |x\rangle$,

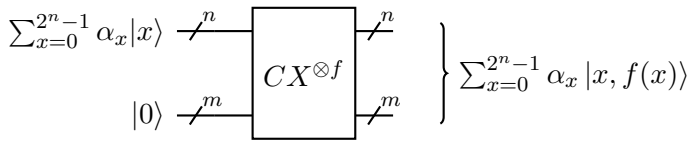


Figure 4.6: Querying a QRAM $CX^{\otimes f}$ with an input in superposition produces an entangled state encoding the superposition of all entries in the data base.

while the second subset of qubits are in the ground state $|0\rangle$. By (4.11), the output state is given by the superposition

$$\sum_{x=0}^{2^n-1} \alpha_x \, |x, f(x)\rangle \, , \tag{4.13}$$

which encodes *all* 2^n input and output values.

Crucially, while the output state (4.13) depend on all the entries of the data base, measuring the output qubits would "collapse" the state to one of the states $|x, f(x)\rangle$ with probability $|\alpha_x|^2$. We will discuss in the next section a (more useful!) application of the superposition property illustrated in Fig. 4.6.

4.4 Deutsch's Problem and Quantum Parallelism

The design of quantum algorithms revolves around the definition of mechanisms that leverage the unique quantum properties of superposition and entanglement. Deutsch's algorithm, the first demonstration of the possibility of a quantum "speed-up", takes advantage of the superposition property of a QRAM illustrated in Fig. 4.6. This property is an example of **quantum parallelism**: With a single application of the controlled shift operator $CX^{\otimes f}$, one can compute the superposition state (4.13), which involves all the input-output values of function $f(\cdot)$.

To focus on Deutsch's problem, consider a binary function

$$f(x) \in \{0, 1\} \text{ with } x \in \{0, 1\} \tag{4.14}$$

taking one bit as input and producing one bit as the output, i.e., $n = 1$ and $m = 1$. There are only four such binary functions $f(\cdot)$, which are listed in Table 4.1. Suppose that we only wanted to know if $f(\cdot)$ is

	$x=0$	$x=1$
f_0	0	0
f_1	0	1
f_2	1	0
f_3	1	1

Table 4.1: The four possible binary functions with a single cbit as the input and a single cbit as the output ($m = n = 1$). The table lists the outputs as a function of the input (column value).

constant – i.e., if it is one of the functions (f_0, f_3) – or not – i.e., if it is one of the functions (f_1, f_2). In a classical system, we would need to query the value of function $f(\cdot)$ at both values of $x \in \{0, 1\}$ to find out. By Deutsch's algorithm, quantum computing requires only one application of the function-computing operator U_f, demonstrating a quantum speed-up. How can this be accomplished?

As discussed in the previous section, with a single use of the controlled shift operator CX^f, we can compute the superposition of both input-output values of function $f(\cdot)$. Note that we have dropped the Kronecker product from the notation $CX^{\otimes f}$ to indicate that we have a single controlled qubit in this example. Specifically, this can be done using the circuit in Fig. 4.7, which specializes the QRAM circuit in Fig. 4.6 for $m = 1$ and $n = 1$. Note that the use of the Hadamard gate on the first qubit produces of the equal superposition $|+\rangle = 1/\sqrt{2}(|0\rangle + |1\rangle)$ (i.e., $\alpha_x = 1/\sqrt{2}$ for $x = 0, 1$ in Fig. 4.6). By the general result summarized in Fig. 4.6, after the CX^f gate in Fig. 4.7, we have the state

$$|\psi\rangle = CX^f|+, 0\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \sum_{x=0}^{1} |x, f(x)\rangle. \tag{4.15}$$

While this state encodes all input-output values of the function $f(x)$, it is not clear how to extract useful information from it. In fact, if we measure the first qubit in the computational basis, by the generalized Born rule (see Sec. 3.3), we end up with the post-measurement state $|x, f(x)\rangle$ where $x = 0$ or $x = 1$ with equal probability $1/2$. This amounts

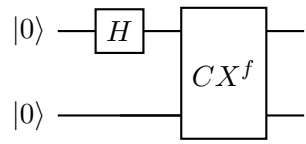


Figure 4.7: An application of the QRAM circuit in Fig. 4.6 for the special case $m = 1$ and $n = 1$.

to observing the value $f(x)$ of the function at a single, randomly selected, input $x \in \{0, 1\}$. Therefore, we cannot learn anything more than a single value of function $f(x)$ from a single measurement of the superposition state $|\psi\rangle$. The hope is that, based on a single, properly designed, measurement of the superposition state $|\psi\rangle$, we can instead learn something about the *relation* among values of $f(x)$ across different values of x. Deutsch's algorithm shows that indeed a single measurement is sufficient to determine whether function $f(\cdot)$ is constant or not.

Deutsch's algorithm is described by the quantum circuit shown in Fig. 4.8. For now, we recognize two elements that we have encountered before. First, the top Hadamard gate has the same role explained in the context of Fig. 4.6 of probing the function $f(\cdot)$ via a superposition (here given by $H|1\rangle = |-\rangle = 1/\sqrt{2}(|0\rangle - |1\rangle)$). Second, the cascade of Hadamard gate and measurement applied to the top qubit implements a measurement in the diagonal basis $\{|+\rangle, |-\rangle\}$ (see Sec. 3.2.3).

We will demonstrate in Sec. 4.6 that, if $f(\cdot)$ is constant, measuring the first qubit as in Fig. 4.8 gives $x = 1$ with probability 1; while, if $f(\cdot)$ is not constant, the measurement returns $x = 0$ with probability 1. Therefore, a single measurement is sufficient to settle the question of whether function $f(\cdot)$ is constant or not. To prove this result, which demonstrates a quantum speed-up for the problem at hand, we will introduce the key idea of phase kick-back, and return to Deutsch's algorithm in Sec. 4.6.

4.5 Phase Kick-Back

In this section, we describe the key idea that underlies the design of Deutsch's algorithm: phase kick-back. The same principle underpins

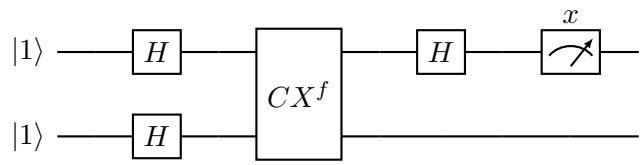


Figure 4.8: Deutsch's algorithm.

also other important quantum algorithms, such as phase estimation.

To start, consider a controlled two-qubit gate. As described in Sec. 2.6.4, a controlled-U gate with qubit 0 as the control qubit and qubit 1 as the controlled qubit can be expressed as

$$C_{01}^U = |0\rangle\langle 0| \otimes I + |1\rangle\langle 1| \otimes U. \tag{4.16}$$

When applied on vectors of the computational basis, this operator acts with gate U on qubit 1 if qubit 0 is in state $|0\rangle$; otherwise, if qubit 0 is in state $|1\rangle$, no change is applied to qubit 1. Note that, as in (4.10), the definition of a controlled gate can be generalized to gates that apply a non-trivial transformations to qubit 1 also in the computational branch in which qubit 0 is in state $|0\rangle$. In this section we will focus on controlled gates of the form (4.16) for simplicity of explanation, and the general case will be considered in the next section.

The key observation in this section is the following. While it may seem that the control bit 0 cannot be changed by the application of the controlled gate (4.16), this is not the case. In fact, the application of the two-qubit gate C_{01}^U can change the relative phase of the amplitudes of the control qubit – a phenomenon known as **phase kick-back**.

To proceed, define as $|\phi\rangle$ an eigenvector of the single-qubit gate U with eigenvalue $\exp(i\theta)$. Recall that all eigenvalues of unitary matrices have unitary magnitude (see Sec. 1.4.4). Consider now the operation of the controlled-U gate on the separable state $|\psi, \phi\rangle$, where the state of the controlling qubit 0 is a generic superposition $|\psi\rangle = \alpha_0|0\rangle + \alpha_1|1\rangle$. This situation is illustrated in Fig. 4.9. Accordingly, we have two branches of computation – in the first the controlling qubit is in state $|0\rangle$, and in the second the controlling qubit is in state $|1\rangle$.

With input $\alpha_0|0, \phi\rangle + \alpha_1|1, \phi\rangle$, the state of the controlled qubit is unchanged in the first branch, since the controlling qubit is in state

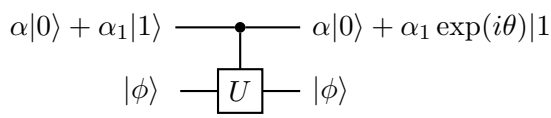


Figure 4.9: The phase-kick phenomenon: When the state of the controlled qubit is an eigenvector $|\phi\rangle$ of the single-qubit gate U with eigenvalue $\exp(i\theta)$, the net effect is that the state of the first qubit acquires a relative phase term $\exp(i\theta)$.

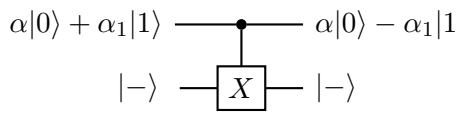


Figure 4.10: The phase kick-back effect for the CNOT gate.

$|0\rangle$; and is merely multiplied by the phase term $\exp(i\theta)$ in the second branch, in which the controlling qubit is in state $|1\rangle$. As summarized in Fig. 4.9 and derived next, this phase term can be equivalently thought of as being "kicked back" to the first qubit, modifying the relative phase between the complex amplitudes of the computational basis states $|0\rangle$ and $|1\rangle$.

To elaborate, let us evaluate the output of the circuit in Fig. 4.9 as

$$\begin{aligned} C_{01}^{U}(|\psi\rangle \otimes |\phi\rangle) &= (|0\rangle\langle 0| \otimes I)(|\psi\rangle \otimes |\phi\rangle) + (|1\rangle\langle 1| \otimes U)(|\psi\rangle \otimes |\phi\rangle) \\ &= \alpha|0\rangle|\phi\rangle + \alpha_1|1\rangle \exp(i\theta)|\phi\rangle \\ &= (\alpha|0\rangle + \alpha_1 \exp(i\theta)|1\rangle)|\phi\rangle, \end{aligned} \tag{4.17}$$

where we have used the definition (4.16) of controlled-U gate. This calculation confirms that the net effect of the application of the controlled-U gate is to leave the second qubit in the eigenstate $|\phi\rangle$ of the gate U, while changing the relative phase of the amplitudes of the first qubit.

As an example, as depicted in Fig. 4.10, consider the CNOT gate as the controlled gate. The NOT, or Pauli X, gate has eigenvectors $|+\rangle$ and $|-\rangle$ with respective eigenvalues 1 and -1. Therefore, the phase kick-back effect is observed by setting the controlled qubit to state $|-\rangle$, in which case the relative phase of the first qubit is modified by π.

We conclude this section by noting that the phase kick-back effect may also lead to undesired effects in the presence of quantum errors (see problems).

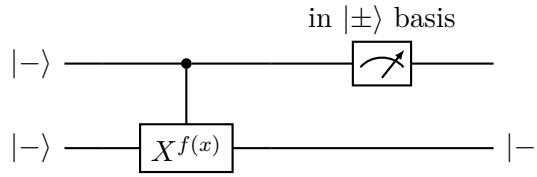


Figure 4.11: An equivalent description of the quantum circuit describing the Deutsch algorithm in Fig. 4.8.

4.6 Validity of Deutsch's Algorithm

In this section, we show that Deutsch's algorithm, which is detailed in Fig. 4.8, is valid, in the sense that, as explained in Sec. 4.4, it returns the correct solution to the problem of identifying constant or non-constant binary functions with probability 1. We will see that this goal is accomplished by leveraging the phase kick-back effect described in the previous section.

4.6.1 Function-Computing Circuit as a Controlled Gate

To start, we recall from Sec. 4.3 that the controlled shift operator CX^f is the controlled qubit gate (4.10), which can be specialized for $m = n = 1$ to

$$CX^f = |0\rangle\langle 0| \otimes X^{f(0)} + |1\rangle\langle 1| \otimes X^{f(1)}. \tag{4.18}$$

In words, for input states in the computational basis, the controlled shift operator applies the unitary $X^{f(x)}$ to the second qubit if the first qubit is in state $|x\rangle$ for $x \in \{0, 1\}$. Note again that this form of controlled gate is more general than in (4.16) in that a non-trivial gate is applied also when the controlling qubit is in state $|0\rangle$.

Now, recalling that the cascade of the Hadamard and standard measurement implements a measurement in the diagonal basis (see Sec. 3.2.3), we can represent the quantum circuit describing the Deutsch algorithm in Fig. 4.8 as in Fig. 4.11. Importantly, the state $|-\rangle$ is an eigenvector of the operator $X^{f(x)}$ for both $x = 0$ and $x = 1$. In fact, we have the equalities

$$X^{f(x)}|-\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|f(x)\rangle - |f(x) \oplus 1\rangle) = (-1)^{f(x)}|-\rangle, \tag{4.19}$$

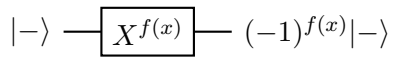


Figure 4.12: The state $|-\rangle$ is an eigenvector of the unitary $U_{\oplus f(x)} = X^{f(x)}$ with eigenvalue $(-1)^{f(x)}$.

showing that the associated eigenvalue is $(-1)^{f(x)}$ (see Fig. 4.12).

It follows that, due to phase kick-back (see previous section), after the controlled shift gate and prior to the measurement in the diagonal basis in the quantum circuit of Fig. 4.11, we have the state

$$\begin{aligned} CX^f|-,-\rangle &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} CX^f(|0,-\rangle - |1,-\rangle) \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|0\rangle X^{f(0)}|-\rangle - |1\rangle X^{f(1)}|-\rangle) \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}((-1)^{f(0)}|0,-\rangle - (-1)^{f(1)}|1,-\rangle) \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}((-1)^{f(0)}|0\rangle - (-1)^{f(1)}|1\rangle)|-\rangle. \end{aligned} \tag{4.20}$$

Therefore, the state of the first qubit, $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}((-1)^{f(0)}|0\rangle - (-1)^{f(1)}|1\rangle)$, is equal to

$$|-\rangle \text{ (or } -|-\rangle) \text{ if the function is constant} \tag{4.21}$$

and

$$|+\rangle \text{ (or } -|+\rangle) \text{ if the function is not constant.} \tag{4.22}$$

Note that the negative sign does not change the quantum state since quantum states are unaffected by global phases.

This completes the proof of validity of Deutsch's algorithm. In fact, measuring the first qubit in the diagonal basis returns 1 (corresponding to state $|-\rangle$) with probability 1 if the function is constant; and it returns 0 (corresponding to state $|+\rangle$) with probability 1 if the function is not constant. Note that Deutsch's algorithm produces a deterministic output despite requiring a single run of the quantum circuit.

4.7 No Cloning Theorem

As discussed in Sec. 4.2, for many quantum algorithms, including the most common quantum machine learning methods (see Chapter 6),

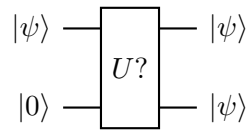


Figure 4.13: No, there is no unitary U that can implement the cloning operation in the figure for any arbitrary quantum state $|\psi\rangle$.

the output of the algorithm is obtained by averaging the outputs of measurements across multiple runs of the algorithm. One may wonder why it is indeed necessary to run the entire circuit anew when the goal is to measure again the same output quantum state produced by the circuit. Couldn't we simply run the circuit once, produce the quantum state, "copy" it to multiple quantum systems so that all systems are in the same state, and finally measure separately such systems? Unfortunately, this procedure is physically impossible to implement – a result known as the no cloning theorem.

The **no cloning theorem** says that there is no unitary transformation that can copy an arbitrary, unknown, state $|\psi\rangle$ of n qubits into another quantum system of n qubits. Such a unitary would operate as shown in Fig. 4.13. Accordingly, given an arbitrary state $|\psi\rangle$ and a set of n additional qubits – typically referred to as **ancillas** – initially in the ground state $|0\rangle$, the hypothetical cloning circuit would produce the separable state $|\psi, \psi\rangle = |\psi\rangle \otimes |\psi\rangle$. In it, both the original qubit and the ancillas are in the unknown state $|\psi\rangle$.

The proof of the non-existence of cloning unitaries is straightforward and follows directly from the linearity of the operator U. It is left here as an exercise (see problems).

The constraint on no cloning has several key implications, such as the following:

- **Quantum state accessibility**: One can generally only obtain partial information about a quantum state, since, once the state is measured, it is no longer accessible;

- **Quantum error correction**: Standard error correction schemes, such as repetition, are not directly applicable to fight quantum

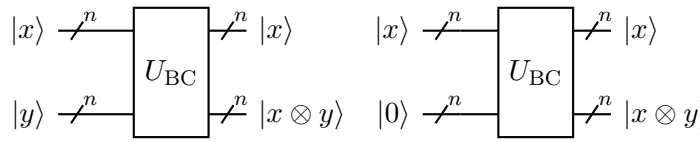


Figure 4.14: The input-output operation of a basis-copying circuit

noise such as decoherence, and novel solutions are required (see Sec. 5.5);

- **No superliminal communications**: Should quantum cloning be allowed, it would be possible to communicate instantaneously via a variant of superdense coding, violating relativity theory;

- **Quantum crypotography**: Unconditionally secure communication schemes can be designed since an eavesdropper cannot copy quantum information. Therefore, any unauthorized measurement of a quantum system would modify the system, potentially revealing the presence of an eavesdropper.

4.8 Classical Cloning: Basis-Copying Gate

As we have seen in the previous section, the no cloning theorem states that one cannot design a quantum circuit that is able to copy *any arbitrary* state. However, this does not rule out the possibility to design quantum circuits that copy *specific* quantum states. A useful and standard example is a circuit that copies only vectors in the computational basis. The fact that this type of transformation is feasible should be clear from the fact that we can, of course, copy classical (deterministic) cbits. We may hence refer to this transformation as a **classical cloning operator**.

The **basis-copying unitary** U_{BC} operates as illustrated in Fig. 4.14. To describe it, let us consider n qubits of interest, along with n ancilla qubits. Given an input state $|x, 0\rangle$, for any quantum state $|x\rangle$ in the computational basis, the basis-copying unitary should produce at the output the state $|x, x\rangle$ as shown in Fig. 4.14-(right).

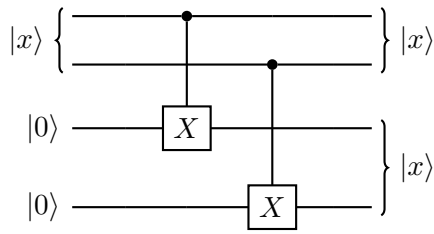


Figure 4.15: Implementation of the basis-copying unitary U_{BC} with $n = 2$.

As can be observed by comparing Fig. 4.14-(left) with Fig. 4.4, the basis-copying circuit amounts to the controlled shift unitary $CX^{\otimes f}$ with function $f(x) = x$ being the identity matrix. Therefore, specializing (4.10), we can write the basis-copying unitary as

$$U_{\mathrm{BC}} = \sum_{x=0}^{2^n-1} |x\rangle\langle x| \otimes (X^{x_0} \otimes \cdots \otimes X^{x_{n-1}}). \tag{4.23}$$

Moreover, the basis-copying unitary can be implemented using CNOT gates as illustrated in Fig. 4.5 for $n = 2$. This circuit is reproduced in Fig. 4.15 with the input of the ancillas set to the ground state $|0\rangle$ to emphasize its operation as a basis-copying circuit. For any number n of qubits, each of the n qubits in the system of interest acts as the controlling qubit of a CNOT gate that controls a distinct ancilla qubit. One can readily check that this circuit implements the transformation described in Fig. 4.14-(left).

It is important to emphasize that the basis-copying circuit is not a general cloning circuit – it cannot be by the no cloning theorem. To see this, consider the situation in Fig. 4.16, in which the $n = 2$ qubits are in a general superposition state $|\psi\rangle = \sum_{x=0}^{3} \alpha_x |x\rangle$. The output of the basis cloning circuit is given by the generally entangled state $|\psi\rangle = \sum_{x=0}^{3} \alpha_x |x, x\rangle$, which is different from the ideal output $|\psi\rangle \otimes |\psi\rangle$ of a hypothetical cloning circuit.

4.9 Conclusions

In this chapter, we have introduced some key elements of quantum computing, including the gate-based architecture, phase kick-back, and

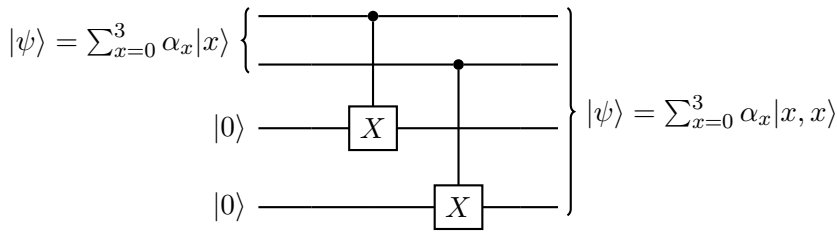


Figure 4.16: The basis-copying unitary is not a general quantum cloning machine.

the constraints imposed by the no cloning theorem. In the next chapter, we will broaden the scope of the quantum primitives at our disposal by further generalizing quantum measurements.

4.10 Recommended Resources

Recommended references on quantum computing include [2], [3], [9]. Hardware implementation aspects are discussed in [10], [11].

4.11 Problems

1. Provide a quantum circuit that implements a general controlled shift operator defined by any function $f(x)$ from m to n bits. [Assume that you have access to a classical data base of 2^m binary strings of n bits defining function $f(x)$.]

2. Prove the no cloning theorem.

3. Describe a situation in which a phase flip occurring on a qubit causes a phase flip on another qubit when the two qubits interact via a CNOT gate. Recall that a phase flip error is described by the application of a Pauli Z operator. [Hint: Use phase kick-back.]

4. Describe the Deutsch-Jozsa algorithm that extends Deutsch algorithm to any n. Describe its operation in terms of phase kick-back (see recommended resources).

5. Show that for any function $f(x)$ from an n-cbit string x to a single cbit ($m = 1$), the $2^n \times 2^n$ matrix U defined as $U|x\rangle = (-1)^{f(x)}|x\rangle$

is unitary.

6. Show that if cloning was possible, then it would also be feasible to communicate information faster than light.

5

Generalizing Quantum Measurements (Part II)

5.1 Introduction

The most general type of measurement studied so far is given by partial measurements in which a subset of qubits is measured in an arbitrary basis (see Sec. 3.3.4). In this chapter, we provide two successive extensions of such measurements. First, we introduce projective measurements, and, with it, the important concept of quantum observables. As an application of projective measurements, we also briefly discuss quantum error correction. Then, we further extend projective measurements to positive operator-valued measurements (POVMs), which provide the most general form of quantum measurement. As an application of POVMs, we cover the problem of unambiguous state detection. Finally, the chapter derives quantum channels from non-selective measurements. Along with POVMs, quantum channels exhaust the set of all possible operations applicable on a quantum system.

5.2 Projective Measurements

In this section, we introduce projective measurements.

5.2.1 Complete vs. Incomplete Measurements

A von Neumann measurement of n qubits in an arbitrary orthonormal basis $\{|v_x\rangle\}_{x=0}^{2^n-1}$ (see Sec. 3.2) is said to be **complete**, reflecting the fact that the post-measurement state is fully described by the measurement output $x \in \{0, 1, ..., 2^n - 1\}$. Indeed, when the measurement output is x, the post-measurement state is given by vector $|v_x\rangle$. Note that the post-measurement state $|v_x\rangle$ is known even when, as is usually the case, the pre-measurement state is not known. In contrast, partial measurements of a subset of qubits (see Sec. 3.3) are said to be **incomplete**, since the post-measurement state is not fully specified by the measurement output. Rather, the state of the qubits that are not measured generally retains its dependence on the pre-measurement state.

As we will introduce in this section, projective measurements provide a more general framework to define incomplete measurements. While a complete measurement necessarily causes a "collapse" of the waveform, unless the pre-measurement state is one of the vectors in the measurement basis $\{|v_x\rangle\}_{x=0}^{2^n-1}$, projective measurements allow for **"gentler" measurements** that leave unchanged pre-measurement states belong to specific (non-trivial) subspaces. As we will see, this property has useful practical implications.

5.2.2 Projection Matrices

Projective measurements are defined by projection matrices. A **projection matrix** Π is a (square) positive semidefinite matrix with eigenvalues equal to 0 or 1. Specifically, an $N \times N$ projection matrix Π with rank $r \in \{1, ..., N\}$ has r eigenvalues equal to 1 and all other, $N - r$, eigenvalues equal to 0. Therefore, by the spectral theorem (see Sec. 1.4.4), it can be expressed as

$$\Pi = \sum_{x=0}^{r-1} |v_x\rangle\langle v_x|, \tag{5.1}$$

where $\{|v_x\rangle\}_{x=0}^{r-1}$ are the eigenvectors associated with eigenvalue 1. Note that the eigendecomposition (5.1) is not unique, in the sense that any other orthonormal basis of the r-dimensional subspace spanned by vectors $\{|v_x\rangle\}_{x=0}^{r-1}$ can be used in (5.1) in lieu of vectors $\{|v_x\rangle\}_{x=0}^{r-1}$.

Geometrically, the operation $\Pi|a\rangle$ for some $N \times 1$ state vector $|a\rangle$ corresponds to the **orthogonal projection** of vector $|a\rangle$ onto the subspace spanned by the r eigenvectors $\{|v_x\rangle\}_{x=0}^{r-1}$ of matrix Π that are associated with eigenvalues equal to 1. We will refer to this r-dimensional subspace as the **subspace spanned by projection matrix** Π. Note that, by this geometric interpretation, unless all N eigenvalues are equal to 1, a projection matrix Π is not unitary, since it does not preserve the norm of the input vector.

In the decomposition (5.1) an important role is played by **rank-1 projection matrices**

$$v_x = |v_x\rangle\langle v_x|. \tag{5.2}$$

Geometrically, the effect of a rank-1 projection matrix v_x on an input vector $|a\rangle$ is to compute the projection $v_x|a\rangle$ of the latter in the direction specified by vector $|v_x\rangle$.

5.2.3 Reviewing von Neumann Measurements

For reference, we review here von Neumann measurements by highlighting the role of (rank-1) projection matrices in the definition of measurement probabilities and post-measurement states.

As discussed in Sec. 3.5.4, a von Neumann measurement is specified by an orthonormal basis $\{|v_0\rangle, |v_1\rangle, ..., |v_{N-1}\rangle\}$ of $N = 2^n$ vectors, each of dimension $N \times 1$. According to Born's rule, the probability of observing output $x \in \{0, 1, ..., N-1\}$ is

$$\begin{aligned} \Pr[\text{measurement output equals } x] &= \langle v_x|\rho|v_x\rangle \\ &= \text{tr}(|v_x\rangle\langle v_x|\rho) = \text{tr}(v_x\rho), \end{aligned} \tag{5.3}$$

where we have used the definition (5.2) of rank-1 projection matrices v_x with $x \in \{0, 1, ..., N-1\}$. Furthermore, the post-measurement state, expressed as a density matrix, is

$$|v_x\rangle\langle v_x| = \frac{v_x \rho v_x}{\langle v_x|\rho|v_x\rangle}, \tag{5.4}$$

as it can be proved by noting that we can always write the density matrix ρ as

$$\rho = \sum_{x=0}^{N-1} \sum_{x'=0}^{N-1} \lambda_{x,x'} |v_x\rangle\langle v_{x'}|, \tag{5.5}$$

with $\lambda_{x,x'} = \langle v_x|\rho|v_{x'}\rangle$.

From the derivations in the previous paragraph, von Neumann measurements are defined by *rank-1* projection matrices $v_x = |v_x\rangle\langle v_x|$ for $x \in \{0, 1, ..., N-1\}$. Importantly, these matrices satisfy the resolution-of-identity condition

$$\sum_{x=0}^{N-1} v_x = I, \tag{5.6}$$

where I is the $N \times N$ identity matrix. To see that the equality (5.6) holds, it is sufficient to note that we have the equality

$$\left(\sum_{x=0}^{N-1} v_x\right)|\psi\rangle = |\psi\rangle \tag{5.7}$$

for any input state, since we can always express any input state as the superposition $|\psi\rangle = \sum_{x=0}^{N-1} \alpha_x |v_x\rangle$ and we have

$$v_x|v_{x'}\rangle = |v_x\rangle\langle v_x|v_{x'}\rangle, \tag{5.8}$$

with $\langle v_x|v_{x'}\rangle = 0$ for $x \neq x'$ and $\langle v_x|v_x\rangle = 1$.

5.2.4 Defining Projective Measurements

Generalizing the description given in the previous subsection of von Neumann measurements, projective measurements are defined as follows. A projective measurement is specified by a set $N' \leq N$ of projection matrices $\{\Pi_y\}_{y=0}^{N'-1}$, with rank possibly larger than 1 (when $N' < N$), such that the resolution-of-identity condition

$$\sum_{y=0}^{N'-1} \Pi_y = I \tag{5.9}$$

is satisfied. Geometrically, condition (5.9) indicates that the subspace spanned by the union of the eigenvectors of all projection matrices $\{\Pi_y\}_{y=0}^{N'-1}$ equals the entire N-dimensional Hilbert space.

A projective measurement defined by projection matrices $\{\Pi_y\}_{y=0}^{N'-1}$ satisfying the resolution-of-identity condition (5.9) operates on an input quantum state ρ as follows.

- **Born's rule**: The probability of observing $y \in \{0, 1, ..., N' - 1\}$ is

$$\Pr[\text{measurement output equals } y] = \text{tr}(\Pi_y \rho), \tag{5.10}$$

which, for a pure state $\rho = |\psi\rangle\langle\psi|$ simplifies as

$$\Pr[\text{measurement output equals } y] = \text{tr}(\Pi_y \rho) = \langle\psi|\Pi_y|\psi\rangle; \tag{5.11}$$

- **"Incomplete collapse" of the state**: The post-measurement state is

$$\frac{\Pi_y \rho \Pi_y}{\text{tr}(\Pi_y \rho)}, \tag{5.12}$$

which, for a pure state $\rho = |\psi\rangle\langle\psi|$ simplifies as

$$\frac{\Pi_y |\psi\rangle}{\sqrt{\langle\psi|\Pi_y|\psi\rangle}}. \tag{5.13}$$

With rank-1 projection matrices, these rules reduce to the von Neumann measurement reviewed in the previous subsection, which are complete. More generally, by the post-measurement state (5.13), projective measurements are incomplete. To see this, assume that projection matrix Π_y has rank larger than 1 and that the input state $|\psi\rangle$ is an unknown coherent state. Then, upon measuring output y, the post-measurement state (5.13) can be generally only determined as being any state vector in the subspace spanned by projection matrix Π_y.

A related observation concerns the pre-measurement states that are left **unchanged** by a projective measurement. A von Neumann measurement in basis $\{|v_0\rangle, |v_1\rangle, ..., |v_{N-1}\rangle\}$ leaves a pre-measurement state $|\psi\rangle$ unchanged only if it is one of the vectors $|v_x\rangle$ in the basis, i.e., if $|\psi\rangle = |v_x\rangle$ for some $x \in \{0, 1, ..., N - 1\}$. In contrast, a projective measurement leaves a state $|\psi\rangle$ unchanged if it is *any* vector in the subspace spanned by one of the projection matrices Π_y. This is because, in this case, the projective measurement returns y with probability 1, and the post-measurement state (5.13) equals the pre-measurement state. This property is at the core of the application of projective measurements for quantum error correction (see Sec. 5.5).

5.2.5 Projective Measurements Generalize von Neumann Measurements and Partial Measurements

As mentioned at the beginning of this chapter, projective measurements include the most general type of measurement studied prior to this chapter, i.e., partial measurements in an arbitrary basis, which were detailed in Sec. 3.3.4.

To see this, consider as in Sec. 3.3.4 systems of n qubits in which we measure any subset of $n' \leq n$ qubits in any orthonormal basis $\{|v_y\rangle\}_{y=0}^{2^{n'}-1}$. We order the qubits so that the first n' qubits are measured. Now, define the projection matrices

$$\Pi_y = v_y \otimes I, \tag{5.14}$$

where $v_y = |v_y\rangle\langle v_y|$ is a rank-1 projection matrix and the identity matrix is of size $2^{n-n'} \times 2^{n-n'}$. It can be now readily checked that, for any given pre-measurement state $|\psi\rangle$, the generalized Born rule (3.20) and the post-measurement state (3.21) are obtained from the projective measurement rules (5.11) and (5.13), respectively.

5.2.6 Separable vs. Joint Measurements

As discussed in Sec. 3.2, some measurements, like standard measurements, can be carried out separately on each qubit, while others require joint measurements across multiple qubits. The formalism of projective measurements makes it easy to distinguish these two situations.

To elaborate, consider a quantum system in which we identify a number of subsystems, e.g., the individual qubits. A separable measurement across the subsystems is specified by projection matrices that can be expressed as the Kronecker product of individual projection matrices, one for each of the subsystems.

An example of a separable measurement is given by the partial measurements studied in the previous subsection. In fact, the projection matrix in (5.14) is written as the Kronecker product $v_y \otimes I$ of a projection matrix, v_y, operating on the subsystem being measured and of the degenerate projection matrix given by the identity matrix I. The latter indicates that no measurement is carried out on the second subset of qubits.

More generally, when the projection matrices cannot be expressed in Kronecker product form, the measurement needs to be carried out jointly across the involved subsystems.

5.2.7 How to Construct a Projective Measurement

The projection matrices $\{\Pi_y\}_{y=0}^{N'-1}$ defining a projective measurement can be always obtained from some orthonormal basis $\{|v_0\rangle, |v_1\rangle, ..., |v_{N-1}\rangle\}$ by: (i) partitioning vectors $\{|v_0\rangle, |v_1\rangle, ..., |v_{N-1}\rangle\}$ into N' subsets; and (ii) defining Π_y as the projection matrix onto the subspace spanned by the y-th subset of basis vectors.

More formally, in order to define a projective measurement, let us fix:

- an orthonormal basis $\{|v_0\rangle, |v_1\rangle, ..., |v_{N-1}\rangle\}$;
- and a partition of the index set $\{0, 1, ..., N-1\}$ into N' disjoint subsets $\mathcal{X}_y \subseteq \{0, 1, ..., N-1\}$ with $y \in \{0, 1, ..., N'-1\}$, such that their union equals the overall set $\{0, 1, ..., N-1\}$.

Then, each matrix Π_y is defined as the projection matrix onto the subspace spanned by the y-th subset of vectors, i.e.,

$$\Pi_y = \sum_{x \in \mathcal{X}_y} |v_x\rangle\langle v_x|. \tag{5.15}$$

If each set $\mathcal{X}_y$ contains a single vector, and hence all projection matrices have rank 1, this construction recovers the von Neumann measurement in the orthonormal basis $\{|v_0\rangle, |v_1\rangle, ..., |v_{N-1}\rangle\}$.

5.2.8 An Example: Parity Measurements

To illustrate the operation of a projective measurement, let us consider $n = 2$ qubits (i.e., $N = 4$) and fix the computational basis $\{|00\rangle$,$|01\rangle$, $|10\rangle$, $|11\rangle\}$. A projective measurement with $N' = 2$ possible outcomes can be defined by partitioning these vectors into **even-parity states** $\{|00\rangle, |11\rangle\}$, for which the number of ones in the defining cbit string is an even number; and **odd-parity states** $\{|01\rangle, |10\rangle\}$ in which the number of ones is odd. Note that this corresponds to the subsets $\mathcal{X}_0 = \{00, 11\}$ and $\mathcal{X}_1 = \{01, 10\}$.

Accordingly, the **parity projective measurement** is defined by the rank-2 projection matrices

$$\Pi_0 = |00\rangle\langle 00| + |11\rangle\langle 11| \tag{5.16}$$

and

$$\Pi_1 = |01\rangle\langle 01| + |10\rangle\langle 10|. \tag{5.17}$$

Note that this is a **joint** measurement since the projection matrices Π_0 and Π_1 cannot be expressed as the Kronecker products of 2×2 projection matrices.

Let us now study the effect of the parity projective measurements on two qubits in an arbitrary pure state

$$|\psi\rangle = \alpha_{00}|00\rangle + \alpha_{01}|01\rangle + \alpha_{10}|10\rangle + \alpha_{11}|11\rangle. \tag{5.18}$$

By the Born rule (5.11), the output of the measurement is $y = 0$ with probability

$$\langle\psi|\Pi_0|\psi\rangle = |\alpha_{00}|^2 + |\alpha_{11}|^2, \tag{5.19}$$

and $y = 1$ with probability

$$\langle\psi|\Pi_1|\psi\rangle = |\alpha_{01}|^2 + |\alpha_{10}|^2. \tag{5.20}$$

Furthermore, the post-measurement state (5.13) is

$$\frac{\Pi_0|\psi\rangle}{\sqrt{\langle\psi|\Pi_0|\psi\rangle}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{|\alpha_{00}|^2 + |\alpha_{11}|^2}}(\alpha_{00}|00\rangle + \alpha_{11}|11\rangle) \tag{5.21}$$

when the measurement output is $y = 0$; while it is

$$\frac{\Pi_1|\psi\rangle}{\sqrt{\langle\psi|\Pi_1|\psi\rangle}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{|\alpha_{01}|^2 + |\alpha_{10}|^2}}(\alpha_{01}|01\rangle + \alpha_{10}|10\rangle) \tag{5.22}$$

when the measurement output is $y = 1$.

Therefore, if the measurement is $y \in \{0, 1\}$, the post-measurement state (5.21) is in the subspace spanned by Π_y, i.e., by the even- or odd-parity computational-basis vectors. Apart from this information, nothing else can be inferred from the output of the measurement, unless one knows the amplitudes α_{00}, α_{01}, α_{10}, and α_{11} of the pre-measurement state. This makes the measurement incomplete. Note the difference with

a von Neumann measurement in the computational basis, in which the post-measurement state is the computational-basis vector $|x_0, x_1\rangle$ corresponding to the measurement's output $(x_0, x_1) \in \{0,1\}^2$.

Consider now the situation in which the measured state $|\psi\rangle$ is in the subspace spanned by Π_0, and hence it can be written as $|\psi\rangle = \alpha_{00}|00\rangle + \alpha_{11}|11\rangle$. Since this state is the superposition of even-parity computational basis vectors, it is also said to have an **even parity**. When applied to such an even-parity state, the parity measurement produces output $y = 0$ with probability 1, and the post-measurement state equals the pre-measurement state. Similarly, if the state $|\psi\rangle$ has an **odd parity**, i.e., if it is given as $|\psi\rangle = \alpha_{01}|01\rangle + \alpha_{10}|10\rangle$, lying in the subspace spanned by projection matrix Π_1, the parity measurement produces output $y = 1$ with probability 1, and the post-measurement state coincides with the pre-measurement state.

We finally observe that the projection matrices defining the parity projective measurement can be written also in terms of orthonormal bases other than the computational basis. This is because the have rank larger than 1. As a useful example, it can be directly checked that the projection matrices in (5.38) can be expressed in terms of the Bell basis (2.24) as

$$\Pi_0 = |\Phi^+\rangle\langle\Phi^+| + |\Phi^-\rangle\langle\Phi^-| \tag{5.23}$$

and

$$\Pi_1 = |\Psi^+\rangle\langle\Psi^+| + |\Psi^-\rangle\langle\Psi^-|. \tag{5.24}$$

5.3 Observables

Observables model numerical quantities that can be extracted from a quantum system through measurements. While the measurements presented so far always return cbit strings, observables allow the description of measurements that output more general, real, numerical values. In this section, we define observables and their expectations; provide examples of single- and multi-qubit observables; and finally introduce the concept of compatible observables.

5.3.1 Defining Observables

An observable O assigns a numerical, real, value o_y to each output y of a projective measurement $\{\Pi_y\}_{y=0}^{N'-1}$. Therefore, by the Born rule (5.10), measuring the observable O returns the numerical value o_y with probability $\text{tr}(\Pi_y\rho)$, when the input quantum state is ρ. We can express this defining property as the probability

$$\Pr[\text{measurement of } O \text{ equals } o_y] = \text{tr}(\Pi_y\rho) = \langle\psi|\Pi_y|\psi\rangle, \tag{5.25}$$

for $y \in \{0, 1, ..., N'-1\}$, which reduces to

$$\Pr[\text{measurement of } O \text{ equals } o_y] = \langle\psi|\Pi_y|\psi\rangle \tag{5.26}$$

for pure pre-measurement states $|\psi\rangle$.

Note that, when using the formalism of observables in quantum computing, one is often interested only in the numerical value produced by the measurement and not in the post-measurement state. We will take this viewpoint here, although one can readily define also the post-measurement state via (5.12) given the underlying projective measurement $\{\Pi_y\}_{y=0}^{N'-1}$.

The output of the measurement of an observable is a random variable with distribution (5.25). An important role in many quantum algorithms is played by the **expectation of an observable** (see Sec. 4.2). By (5.25), given an input quantum state ρ, the expectation of observable O, denoted as $\langle O\rangle_\rho$, can be computed as

$$\langle O\rangle_\rho = \sum_{y=0}^{N'-1} o_y \text{tr}(\Pi_y\rho) = \text{tr}(O\rho), \tag{5.27}$$

where we have defined the matrix

$$O = \sum_{y=0}^{N'-1} o_y \Pi_y. \tag{5.28}$$

Matrix O is Hermitian (since the projection matrices are also Hermitian); but not necessarily positive semidefinite, since the values o_y can be negative. Specializing (5.27) to a pure input quantum state $|\psi\rangle$, the expectation of observable O, denoted as $\langle O\rangle_{|\psi\rangle}$, can be written as

$$\langle O\rangle_{|\psi\rangle} = \text{tr}(O|\psi\rangle\langle\psi|) = \langle\psi|O|\psi\rangle. \tag{5.29}$$

The results derived in the last paragraph highlight the important role played by matrix O in the formalism of observables. We now further elaborate on this point to demonstrate that *any* Hermitian matrix O fully describes an observable in terms of both the probabilities (5.25) of all possible outputs $\{o_y\}_{y=0}^{N'-1}$ and of the expectation (5.27). Accordingly, we will conclude that an observable O can be specified by an Hermitian matrix O, justifying the use of the same notation O for both concepts.

To proceed, let us fix an arbitrary Hermitian matrix O. By the spectral theorem, matrix O has the eigendecomposition

$$O = \sum_{x=0}^{N-1} \lambda_x |v_x\rangle\langle v_x|, \tag{5.30}$$

where the eigenvectors $\{|v_0\rangle, |v_1\rangle, ..., |v_{N-1}\rangle\}$ form an orthonormal basis and the associated eigenvalues $\{\lambda_0, \lambda_1, ..., \lambda_{N-1}\}$ are real. The eigenvectors $\{|v_0\rangle, |v_1\rangle, ..., |v_{N-1}\rangle\}$ define the **eigenbasis** of observable O.

To see how to use the eigendecomposition (5.30) to define an observable, let us now write as o_y, with $y \in \{0, 1, ..., N'-1\}$, the N' distinct values of the eigenvalues. Note that we have the inequality $N' \leq N$. The projective measurement associated with observable O is then defined by the projection matrices

$$\Pi_y = \sum_{x:\ \lambda_x = o_y} |v_x\rangle\langle v_x| \tag{5.31}$$

for $y \in \{0, 1, ..., N'-1\}$. The sum in (5.31) is over all eigenvectors associated to the same eigenvalue o_y. That is, each matrix Π_y projects onto the subspace spanned by all the eigenvectors with eigenvalues equal to o_y. With this choice, the observable (5.30) can be written as in (5.28).

The derivation outlined in the previous paragraph shows that, given a Hermitian matrix O, one can identify the possible numerical outputs of the observable O as the eigenvalues of matrix O. Furthermore, the subspaces spanned by the corresponding eigenvectors associated to each distinct eigenvalue define the projection matrices of the underlying projective measurement. With this information, based on Hermitian matrix O, the observable O is fully specified in terms of probabilities (5.25) and expectation (5.27).

5.3.2 Single-Qubit Observables

In this subsection, we study two examples of observables for single qubits ($n = 1$). The first is the Z **observable**, whose defining Hermitian matrix is given by the Pauli X matrix. For this matrix, the eigendecomposition (5.30) specializes as

$$Z = |0\rangle\langle 0| - |1\rangle\langle 1|, \tag{5.32}$$

and hence the computational basis is the eigenbasis of the Z observable. Therefore, by the discussion in the previous subsection, measuring the Z observable corresponds to a standard von Neumann measurement in the computational basis, in which the measurement output 0 is associated the numerical value $o_0 = 1$ and the measurement output 1 is associated the numerical value $o_1 = -1$. Accordingly, for any pure state $|\psi\rangle = \alpha_0|0\rangle + \alpha_1|1\rangle$, by (5.29), we have the expectation

$$\langle Z\rangle_{|\psi\rangle} = \langle\psi|Z|\psi\rangle = (+1)|\langle 0|\psi\rangle|^2 + (-1)|\langle 1|\psi\rangle|^2 = |\alpha_0|^2 - |\alpha_1|^2. \tag{5.33}$$

Consider now the X **observable**. This is also a valid observable because the Pauli matrix X is Hermitian, and it can be expressed with its eigendecomposition as

$$X = |+\rangle\langle +| - |-\rangle\langle -|. \tag{5.34}$$

This corresponds to a measurement in the diagonal, $\{|+\rangle, |-\rangle\}$, basis – the eigenbasis of observable X – in which the measurement output 0 is associated with numerical value $o_0 = 1$ and the measurement output 1 is associated with $o_1 = -1$. Moreover, for any pure state $|\psi\rangle = \alpha_0|0\rangle + \alpha_1|1\rangle$, we have the expectation

$$\begin{aligned}\langle X\rangle_{|\psi\rangle} &= \langle\psi|X|\psi\rangle = (+1)|\langle +|\psi\rangle|^2 + (-1)|\langle -|\psi\rangle|^2 \\ &= \frac{|\alpha_0 + \alpha_1|^2}{2} - \frac{|\alpha_0 - \alpha_1|^2}{2}.\end{aligned} \tag{5.35}$$

5.3.3 Separable Multi-Qubit Observables

Let us now consider observables on any number n of qubits. We start by studying the important class of observables defined by Pauli strings. These provide an important example of separable observables, whose

numerical outputs can be produced via separate measurements applied on each qubit.

Using the notation from Sec. 2.6.1, let us write as P_s with $s \in \{0,1,2,3\}$ a Pauli matrix, with

$$P_0 = I,\ P_1 = X,\ P_2 = Y,\ \text{and}\ P_3 = Z. \tag{5.36}$$

Furthermore, let $s^n = [s_0, ..., s_{n-1}]$ be a vector of integers $s_k \in \{0,1,2,3\}$ with $k \in \{0,1,...,n-1\}$. A **string of n Pauli matrices** P_{s^n} is given by the Kronecker product of n Pauli matrices

$$P_{s^n} = P_{s_0} \otimes P_{s_2} \otimes \cdots \otimes P_{s_{n-1}}, \tag{5.37}$$

where each matrix P_{s_k} is one of the Pauli matrices $\{I, X, Y, Z\}$. It can be readily checked that any Pauli string (5.37) is a valid observable.

To illustrate the process of measuring separable observables such as a Pauli string, we study the following example. Consider $n = 2$ qubits and the observable given by the Pauli string $O = Z \otimes Z$. By using the eigendecomposition (5.32), this observable can be written as

$$\begin{aligned} O &= (|0\rangle\langle 0| - |1\rangle\langle 1|) \otimes (|0\rangle\langle 0| - |1\rangle\langle 1|) \\ &= \underbrace{(|00\rangle\langle 00| + |11\rangle\langle 11|)}_{\Pi_0} - \underbrace{(|01\rangle\langle 01| + |10\rangle\langle 10|)}_{\Pi_1}. \end{aligned} \tag{5.38}$$

The expression (5.38) reveals that the eigendecomposition of the observable O is characterized by two eigenvalues, $+1$ and -1, each with an associated subspace of dimension 2. Specifically, the eigenvalue $o_0 = 1$ is associated with the subspace spanned by the even-parity computational basis vectors, i.e., by projection matrix Π_0; while the eigenvalue $o_1 = -1$ is associated with the subspace spanned by the odd-parity computational basis vectors, i.e., by projection matrix Π_1.

From the discussion in Sec. 5.3, it follows that a measurement of the observable $O = Z \otimes Z$ corresponds to the parity projective measurement in which the numerical output $o_0 = 1$ is assigned to an even parity output, and numerical output $o_1 = -1$ is obtained with an odd-parity output. Therefore, the numerical output equals 1 with probability (5.19), and it equals -1 with probability (5.20).

While the parity measurement is not separable (see Sec. 5.2.8), if one is only interested in the numerical output of the measurement of

the observable $O = Z \otimes Z$ (and not also in the post-measurement state), it is possible to implement the measurement of O separately across the two qubits. To this end, we measure the Z observable at each of two qubits, and then multiply the numerical outputs obtained from the two measurements.

Measuring the Z observable separately at the two qubits amount to a standard measurement of the two qubits. Therefore, given an input state (5.18), this measurement yields the cbits $(1, 1)$ with probability $|\alpha_{00}|^2$; $(-1, -1)$ with probability $|\alpha_{11}|^2$; $(1, -1)$ with probability $|\alpha_{01}|^2$; and $(-1, 1)$ with probability $|\alpha_{10}|^2$. It follows that the product of the two observations equals 1 with probability $|\alpha_{00}|^2 + |\alpha_{11}|^2$ and -1 with probability $|\alpha_{01}|^2 + |\alpha_{10}|^2$, as in the parity projective measurement.

5.3.4 Joint Multi-Qubit Observables

Not all observables are separable. However, following Sec. 2.6.1, any observable on n qubits, i.e., any Hermitian matrix of dimension $N \times N$ with $N = 2^n$, can be expressed as a linear combination with real coefficients of n-qubit Pauli strings. Therefore, any observable on n qubits can be written as

$$O = \sum_{s^n \in \{0,1,2,3\}^n} a_{s^n} P_{s^n} \tag{5.39}$$

for some real coefficients $\{a_{s^n}\}$.

This decomposition does not provide a way to measure arbitrary observables via separable measurements. However, it suggests an approach to evaluate *expectations* of such observables via the separate measurements of observables of Pauli strings. In fact, by (5.39), the expectation $\langle O \rangle_\rho$ of any observable O can be expressed as the weighted sum, with weights $\{a_{s^n}\}$, of the expectations $\langle P_{s^n} \rangle_\rho$ of the 4^n Pauli observables as

$$\langle O \rangle_\rho = \sum_{s^n \in \{0,1,2,3\}^n} a_{s^n} \langle P_{s^n} \rangle_\rho. \tag{5.40}$$

5.3.5 Compatible Observables

Suppose that we are interested in measuring multiple observables – say O_1 and O_2 – at the same time. Can we do this with a single

measurement? If so, we say that the two observables are compatible. When two observables are not compatible, measuring one observable would produce a post-measurement state for which a measurement of the second observable would no longer have the same distribution as under the original, pre-measurement, state.

It can be proved that two observables O_1 and O_2 are **compatible** if and only if they share a common eigenbasis. Mathematically, let

$$O_1 = \sum_{x=0}^{N-1} \lambda_{1,x} |v_x\rangle\langle v_x| \text{ and } O_2 = \sum_{x=0}^{N-1} \lambda_{2,x} |v_x\rangle\langle v_x| \tag{5.41}$$

be two compatible observables that share the same eigenbasis $\{|v_x\rangle\}_{x=0}^{N-1}$, but have generally different eigenvalues. Measuring both observables simultaneously is possible by carrying out a measurement in the eigenbasis $\{|v_x\rangle\}_{x=0}^{N-1}$. In particular, when obtaining the output x, the numerical output for observable O_1 is the eigenvalue $\lambda_{1,x}$, while for observable O_2 we have the numerical output $\lambda_{2,x}$.

As an alternative, equivalent, characterization, two observables O_1 and O_2 are compatible if and only if they **commute**, that is, if and only if we have the equality

$$O_1 O_2 = O_2 O_1. \tag{5.42}$$

This condition can provide an efficient way to check whether two observables are compatible.

As a first example, any single-qubit observables applied to different qubits – e.g., $O_1 = X \otimes I$ and $O_2 = I \otimes Z$ – are compatible, since they commute – e.g., $O_1 O_2 = O_2 O_1 = X \otimes Z$. In fact, they can be measured via separate measurements on the qubits.

As another example, consider the observables $O_1 = Z \otimes I$ and $O_2 = Z \otimes Z$. The two observables commute, i.e.,

$$(Z \otimes I)(Z \otimes Z) = I \otimes Z = (Z \otimes Z)(Z \otimes I), \tag{5.43}$$

and hence they are compatible. They can be both measured simultaneously via a standard measurement in the computational basis.

In contrast, the observables $O_1 = Z$ and $O_2 = X$ on a single qubit are not compatible since they do not commute, given that we have the

equality

$$XZ = iY = -ZX. \tag{5.44}$$

It follows that they cannot be measured simultaneously. Rather, one needs to prepare the pre-measurement state twice and implement two separate measurements for the two observables.

The existence of incompatible observables is at the core of **Heisenberg uncertainty principle**. This often-cited result indicates that, for a given input quantum state $|\psi\rangle$, the product of the standard deviations of the observations of two measurements is lower bounded by a quantity that depends on the degree to which the two observables commute.

5.4 Implementing Projective Measurements

As we have seen in Sec. 3.2.3, any complete measurement in an arbitrary basis $\{|v_0\rangle, |v_1\rangle, ..., |v_{N-1}\rangle\}$ can be implemented as illustrated in Fig. 3.2 by means of standard measurements in the computational basis. This is done by adding pre- and post-processing unitary transformations $U_{v_x \to x} = \sum_{x=0}^{N-1} |x\rangle\langle v_x|$ and $U_{v_x \to x}^\dagger = U_{x \to v_x}$ that convert the given basis into the computational basis $\{|x\rangle\}_{x=0}^{N-1}$ and back, respectively. As we discuss in this section, a similar approach can be used to implement more general projective measurements for an important special case.

5.4.1 Balanced Projective Measurements

We specifically focus on projective measurements on n qubits that satisfy the following two conditions:

- the number of measurement outcomes, and hence the number of projection matrices, is $N' = 2^{n'}$ for some integer for $n' \in \{1, 2, ..., n\}$; and
- all the projection matrices Π_y, with $y \in \{0, 1, ..., 2^{n'} - 1\}$, have the same rank $N/N' = 2^{n-n'}$ with $N = 2^n$.

We will refer to such projective measurements as being **balanced**, since the subspaces corresponding to the projection matrices defining it have the same dimension. Balanced measurements include as special cases

the parity measurement introduced in Sec. 5.2.8, as well as standard partial measurements of n' qubits (see Sec. 5.2.5).

5.4.2 Implementing Balanced Projective Measurements via Partial Measurements

In this subsection, we show that a balanced projective measurement can be carried out via a partial measurement (in the computational basis) of only n' qubit. As illustrated in Fig. 5.1, this is done by adding suitable pre- and post-measurement unitaries that perform a specific change-of-basis transformation. This transformation, as well as the overall system depicted in Fig. 5.1, generalize the approach detailed in Fig. 3.2 for the special case of von Neumann measurements (in which $n' = n$).

Following Sec. 5.2.7, any balanced projective measurement can be expressed in terms of an orthonormal basis $\{|v_{x'}\rangle\}_{x'=0}^{N-1}$ by partitioning the basis into $N' = 2^{n'}$ subsets, each with $N/N' = 2^{n-n'}$ elements. This partition can be defined without loss of generality in such a way that the n-cbit string x' is expressed as the concatenation of two cbit strings as $x' = (x, y)$, where

- the n'-cbit string y indicates the subset to which the vector $|v_{x'}\rangle$ belongs, i.e., we have $x' \in \mathcal{X}_y$ (recall the notation in Sec. 5.2.7); and
- the $n - n'$-cbit string x identifies the specific vector $|v_{x'}\rangle$ within the y-th subset.

With the partition described in the previous paragraph, a balanced projective measurement is described by projection matrices

$$\Pi_y = \sum_{x=0}^{N/N'-1} |v_{x,y}\rangle\langle v_{x,y}| \tag{5.45}$$

with $y \in \{0, 1, ..., N' - 1\}$.

The change-of-basis unitary $U_{v_{x,y}\to x,y}$ in Fig. 5.1 maps each vector $|v_{x,y}\rangle$ in the orthonormal basis used to describe the projective measurement to the computational-basis vector $|x, y\rangle$, i.e.,

$$U_{v_{x,y}\to x,y}|v_{x,y}\rangle = |x, y\rangle. \tag{5.46}$$

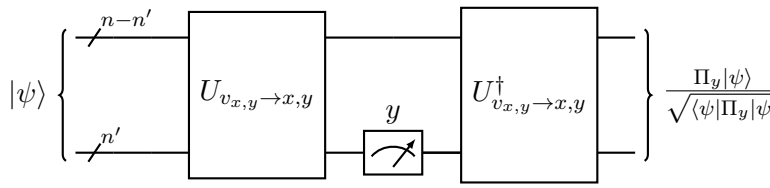


Figure 5.1: Architecture implementing a general balanced projective measurement via a partial measurement of a subset of qubits.

Note that this transformation reduces to the unitary $U_{v_x\to x}$ used in Fig. 3.2 for the special case of von Neumann measurements ($n' = n$).

With this transformation, given an input state $|\psi\rangle$, measuring the second set of n' qubits as detailed in Fig. 5.1 produces output $y \in \{0, 1, ..., 2^{n'} - 1\}$ with the desired probability (5.11). This can be readily checked by using the generalized Born rule (see problems). Furthermore, after the second unitary transformation, one recovers the post-measurement state (5.13).

5.4.3 An Example: Parity Measurements

As an example, in this subsection, we specialize the architecture in Fig. 5.1 to the parity measurement with projection matrices $\{\Pi_0, \Pi_1\}$ in (5.16)-(5.16). Note that we have $n' = 1$ and that both projection matrices have rank equal to 2. Therefore, the parity projective measurement is a balanced projective measurement as defined in this section.

For the parity measurement, the transformation $U_{v_{x,y}\to x,y}$ described in the previous subsection should map states $|00\rangle$ and $|11\rangle$ to $|00\rangle$ and $|10\rangle$, respectively; and states $|01\rangle$ and $|10\rangle$ to $|01\rangle$ and $|11\rangle$, respectively. In fact, after this transformation, the state of the second qubit describes the index y of the projector corresponding to the subspace containing the input eigenstate; while the state of the first qubit distinguishes the two input eigenstates within the eigenbasis of the same projection matrix.

Since the transformation outlined above can be implemented via a CNOT gate, a parity measurement can be carried out by specializing the architecture in Fig. 5.1 as depicted in Fig. 5.2. To verify that the

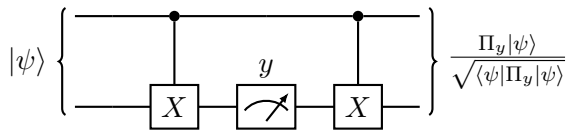


Figure 5.2: A quantum circuit implementing a parity measurement on two qubits.

circuit in Fig. 5.2 indeed produces the desired outcome, consider an arbitrary pure state (5.18) as the input. After the first CNOT in Fig. 5.2, we have

$$C_{01}|\psi\rangle = \alpha_{00}|00\rangle + \alpha_{01}|01\rangle + \alpha_{10}|11\rangle + \alpha_{11}|10\rangle. \tag{5.47}$$

Note that for each vector in the computational basis, i.e., every input vector of the form $|x, y\rangle$ with $x, y \in \{0, 1\}$, the second qubit now reports the parity of the corresponding input state. By the generalized Born rule, measuring the second qubit produces the output $y = 0$ and the post-measurement state

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{|\alpha_{00}|^2 + |\alpha_{11}|^2}}(\alpha_{00}|00\rangle + \alpha_{11}|10\rangle) \tag{5.48}$$

with probability $|\alpha_{00}|^2 + |\alpha_{11}|^2$. After the second CNOT, we finally get the desired post-measurement state (5.13) as

$$\frac{\Pi_0|\psi\rangle}{\sqrt{\langle\psi|\Pi_0|\psi\rangle}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{|\alpha_{00}|^2 + |\alpha_{11}|^2}}(\alpha_{00}|00\rangle + \alpha_{11}|11\rangle). \tag{5.49}$$

A similar calculation applies for the case in which the measurement output is $y = 1$.

5.5 Quantum Error Correction

As an application of projective measurements, in this section, we briefly introduce the problem of quantum error correction. To this end, suppose that we have a noisy quantum "channel", which may represent, for instance, a communication link or noisy hardware. We would like to design an error correction scheme that is able to recover the original state of a qubit irrespective of the noise on the channel. Classically, the problem could be solved via redundancy: By copying and transmitting

the information of interest multiple times through the channel, one can ensure some level of protection against channel errors. However, by the no cloning theorem, we cannot duplicate an unknown quantum state in order to increase robustness to noise.

Notwithstanding the outlined limitation imposed by no cloning, is some form of error correction possible? We will see in this section that the answer to this question is affirmative, and that quantum error correction hinges on the implementation of projective measurements. It is emphasized that quantum error correction is a vast area of research, and that this section is only meant to illustrate some basic ideas pertaining the connection with projective measurements.

5.5.1 Bit-Flip Channel

In order to illustrate the process of quantum error correction, we consider a simple channel characterized by a "bit flip" noise. Given three qubits with a given input state, the channel may "flip" at most one out of three qubits. Formally, this means that, if we have three qubits in a general coherent state

$$|\psi_{in}\rangle = \sum_{x=0}^{1}\sum_{y=0}^{1}\sum_{z=0}^{1}\alpha_{x,y,z}|x,y,z\rangle \tag{5.50}$$

before the application of the channel, the state $|\psi_{out}\rangle$ after the application of the channel may be

$$\begin{aligned}
&|\psi_{out}\rangle = |\psi_{in}\rangle, \text{ or}\\
&|\psi_{out}\rangle = \ (X\otimes I\otimes I)|\psi_{in}\rangle = \sum_{x=0}^{1}\sum_{y=0}^{1}\sum_{z=0}^{1}\alpha_{x,y,z}|\bar{x},y,z\rangle, \text{ or}\\
&|\psi_{out}\rangle = (I\otimes X\otimes I)|\psi_{in}\rangle = \sum_{x=0}^{1}\sum_{y=0}^{1}\sum_{z=0}^{1}\alpha_{x,y,z}|x,\bar{y},z\rangle, \text{ or}\\
&|\psi_{out}\rangle = (I\otimes I\otimes X)|\psi_{in}\rangle = \sum_{x=0}^{1}\sum_{y=0}^{1}\sum_{z=0}^{1}\alpha_{x,y,z}|x,y,\bar{z}\rangle,
\end{aligned} \tag{5.51}$$

where $\bar{x} = 1\oplus x$, $\bar{y} = 1\oplus y$, and $\bar{z} = 1\oplus z$. The first state output $|\psi_{out}\rangle$ corresponds to the case in which no bit flip is applied by the channel;

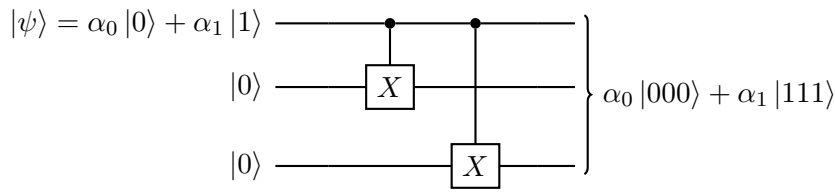


Figure 5.3: Quantum encoding for a quantum error correction scheme designed to correct at most one bit flip.

the second to the case in which the first qubit is flipped; and so on. Note that a bit flip corresponds to a Pauli string with a single X operator in the position corresponding to the qubit affected by the flip.

We refer to Sec. 5.8 for more discussion on quantum channels.

5.5.2 Quantum Coding

Let us assume that we have a qubit with an unknown state $|\psi\rangle = \alpha_0|0\rangle + \alpha_1|1\rangle$, which we would like to protect against the bit-flip channel described in the previous subsection. Specifically, we would like to encode this qubit in such a way that errors due to the channel can be corrected. While duplication (cloning) is not possible, we can use the "classical cloning", or basis-copying, circuit introduced in Sec. 4.8. The corresponding encoding circuit is shown in Fig. 5.3. Importantly, the resulting encoded state

$$\alpha_0|000\rangle + \alpha_1|111\rangle \tag{5.52}$$

is different from a simple replica of the quantum state $|\psi\rangle$, which, by the no cloning theorem, cannot be realized for any input state $|\psi\rangle$.

With this encoding circuit, the channel at hand can output one of the following states $|\psi_{out}\rangle$

$$\begin{aligned}
|\psi_{out}\rangle &= \alpha_0|000\rangle + \alpha_1|111\rangle && \text{if there is no error} \\
|\psi_{out}\rangle &= \alpha_0|100\rangle + \alpha_1|011\rangle && \text{if the first qubit is flipped} \\
|\psi_{out}\rangle &= \alpha_0|010\rangle + \alpha_1|101\rangle && \text{if the second qubit is flipped} \\
|\psi_{out}\rangle &= \alpha_0|001\rangle + \alpha_1|110\rangle && \text{if the last qubit is flipped.}
\end{aligned}$$

5.5.3 Quantum Decoding via a Projective Measurement

Based on the discussion in the previous subsection, if there is no error, the state lies in the two-dimensional space spanned by vectors $|000\rangle$ and $|111\rangle$. The projection matrix onto this subspace is given as

$$\Pi_{00} = |000\rangle\langle 000| + |111\rangle\langle 111|. \tag{5.53}$$

If the first qubit is flipped, the state lies instead in the two-dimensional space spanned by vectors $|100\rangle$ and $|011\rangle$, whose corresponding projection matrix is

$$\Pi_{10} = |100\rangle\langle 100| + |011\rangle\langle 011|. \tag{5.54}$$

Similarly, if the second qubit is flipped, the state lies in the two-dimensional space spanned by vectors $|010\rangle$ and $|101\rangle$ with projection matrix

$$\Pi_{11} = |010\rangle\langle 010| + |101\rangle\langle 101|; \tag{5.55}$$

and, if the third qubit is flipped, the state lies in the two-dimensional space spanned by vectors $|001\rangle$ and $|110\rangle$ with projection matrix

$$\Pi_{01} = |001\rangle\langle 001| + |110\rangle\langle 110|. \tag{5.56}$$

The reason for the specific choice of the numbering of the projection matrices will be made clear later.

Based on the observations in the previous paragraph, applying the projective measurement $\{\Pi_{00}, \Pi_{01}, \Pi_{10}, \Pi_{11}\}$ to the output of the quantum channel $|\psi_{out}\rangle$ allows one to correct one bit flip error by applying a NOT gate, i.e., a Pauli X operator, to the first, second, or third qubit depending on the output of the measurement. Specifically, if the output of the measurement is $y = 00$, no operation should be applied; if it is $y = 10$, a NOT gate should be applied to the first qubit; and so on.

Crucially, the success of this operation in correcting a bit flip hinges on the use of a projective measurement. In fact, with a complete measurement, the state of the qubits would "collapse", destroying the encoded superposition state $\alpha_0|000\rangle + \alpha_1|111\rangle$ and hence losing information about the original qubit state $|\psi\rangle = \alpha_0|0\rangle + \alpha_1|1\rangle$. In contrast, as we have seen in Sec. 5.2, the projective measurement leaves unchanged quantum

states that lie within the subspace corresponding to each projection matrix.

As seen in this subsection, in order to apply error correction, one should implement a NOT (Pauli X) gate depending on the output of the projective measurement $\{\Pi_0, \Pi_{01}, \Pi_{10}, \Pi_{11}\}$. To make this possible, it is necessary to have both measurement output and post-measurement state simultaneously encoded in the state of the quantum system. This way, at the next computation step, the measurement output can be used to determine the operation to be applied to the post-measurement state. This is typically done by adding ancilla qubits, whose state encodes the output y of the projective measurement. This will be discussed in the next section.

5.5.4 Key Principles of Quantum Error Correction

To sum up the discussion so far, it is useful to reiterate and generalize the principle underlying quantum error correction. Quantum error correction aims at protecting an unknown state of k qubits – $k = 1$ in the example above – by encoding such state into the state of n qubits – $n = 3$ in the example. Note that the unknown original state lies in a Hilbert space of dimension 2^k. As a result of encoding, the state of the encoded qubit hence occupies a 2^k-dimensional subspace in the 2^n Hilbert space corresponding to the n encoded qubits.

Encoding is designed in such a way that any possible distinct error causes the state of the encoded qubits to lie in an orthogonal subspace of dimension 2^k. A projective measurement defined by projectors onto these orthogonal subspaces can thus distinguish among the different types of errors, while leaving the state within each subspace undisturbed.

If there are m different errors – $m = 3$ in the example – the design requirement outlined in the previous paragraph calls for a number of encoded qubits, n, satisfying the condition

$$2^n \geq 2^k(1 + m). \tag{5.57}$$

In fact, the Hilbert space of the encoded qubits should include $m + 1$ orthogonal subspaces, each of dimension 2^k, with one subspace corresponding to the absence of errors on the channel and the others

accounting for each of the m types of errors. In the example studied in this section, we have $k = 1$, $n = 3$, and $m = 3$, which satisfies this condition with equality as $2^3 = 2^1(1 + 3) = 8$. When further elaborated on by accounting for all possible error types on single qubits, the inequality (5.57) yields the so called **quantum Hamming bound**.

5.5.5 Quantum Error Detection

As a less powerful alternative to quantum error correction, it is also possible to design **quantum error detection** schemes, whereby errors are only detected and not corrected. With error detection, one can determine the presence of an error, without necessarily identifying, and correcting, the specific error. With reference to the discussion in the previous subsection, for quantum error detection, there is no need for the m subspaces corresponding to different errors to be orthogonal. In fact, it is sufficient that all types of errors cause the post-channel state to lie in the *same* subspace, as long as the latter is orthogonal to that encompassing the encoded, noiseless, state.

To implement a quantum error detector, one can define an observable that assigns the $+1$ eigenvalue to the "no-error" projection matrix Π_0 describing the subspace spanned by the code, and a -1 eigenvalue to the subspace Π_1 orthogonal to Π_0. This way, if a measurement of the observable returns -1, one can conclude with certainty that an error has occurred, while, if the output is $+1$, the state can be concluded to be unaffected by errors.

5.6 Implementing Projective Measurements with Ancillas

As we have discussed in the previous section, for some applications, including quantum error correction, it is useful to have the output of the measurement and the post-measurement state simultaneously encoded in the state of separate quantum systems. This requires adding to the system a set of ancilla qubits, whose state encodes the measurement output. We will hence refer to such measurements as **measurements with ancillas**. In this section, we describe how to implement measurements with ancillas, starting with the case of complete measurements

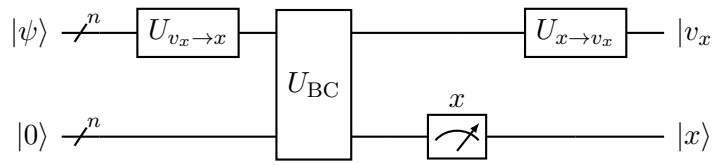


Figure 5.4: von Neumann measurement in an arbitrary orthonormal basis $\{|v_0\rangle, |v_1\rangle, ..., |v_{N-1}\rangle\}$ with ancillas. The ancillas qubits are the second set of n qubits, which are initialized to the ground state $|0\rangle$. Unlike the circuit in Fig. 3.2, this architecture produces both the post-measurement state $|v_x\rangle$ (for the first n qubits) and the output of the measurement, $x \in \{0, 1, ..., 2^n - 1\}$, with the latter encoded in the post-measurement state $|x\rangle$ of the n ancilla qubits.

and then generalizing the presentation to projective measurements.

5.6.1 Complete Measurements with Ancillas

As we demonstrate in this subsection, we can implement a von Neumann measurement with ancillas in any orthonormal basis $\{|v_0\rangle, |v_1\rangle, ..., |v_{N-1}\rangle\}$ for a system of n qubits ($N = 2^n$) via the circuit shown in Fig. 5.4. The circuit operates on the n qubits being measured – in an arbitrary state $|\psi\rangle$ – as well as on n ancilla qubits initialized in the ground state $|0\rangle$.

The circuit in Fig. 5.4 first applies the change-of-basis unitary $U_{v_x \to x}$ to the n qubits being measured as in Fig. 3.2. As detailed in Sec. 3.2.3, this unitary maps each vector $|v_x\rangle$ of the basis defining the measurement to the vector $|x\rangle$ in the computational basis. Unlike the circuit in Fig. 3.2, the first set of n qubits are not directly measured. Rather, they are "copied" via a basis-copying circuit to the second set of n qubits, i.e., to the ancilla qubits. The ancilla qubits are measured, and finally the inverse change-of-basis transformation $U_{x \to v_x}$ is applied to the first n qubits. We recall from Sec. 4.8 that the basis-copying transformation is defined as

$$U_{\text{BC}} = \sum_{x=0}^{N-1} \sum_{y=0}^{N-1} |x, x \oplus y\rangle\langle x, y|, \tag{5.58}$$

where $\{|y\rangle\}_{y=0}^{N-1}$ represents the computational basis for the Hilbert space of the ancillas. The unitary U_{BC} has the effect of "cloning" the vectors in the computational basis from the first n qubits to the ancillas.

For an arbitrary pure state $|\psi\rangle = \sum_{x=0}^{N-1} \alpha_x |v_x\rangle$ of the n qubits being measured, and hence a global state $\sum_{x=0}^{N-1} \alpha_x |x, 0\rangle$ after the change-of-basis transformation $U_{v_x \to x}$, the basis-copying unitary operator yields the state

$$U_{\mathrm{BC}}(U_{v_x \to x} \otimes I) \sum_{x=0}^{N-1} \alpha_x |v_x, 0\rangle = \sum_{x=0}^{N-1} \alpha_x |x, x\rangle. \tag{5.59}$$

Therefore, by the generalized Born rule, measuring the ancillas yields the post-measurement state $|x, x\rangle$ with probability $|\alpha_x|^2$. Finally, this produces the state $|v_x, x\rangle$ after the inverse change-of-basis transformation $U_{x \to v_x}$.

This calculation demonstrates that the architecture in Fig. 5.4 implements a von Neumann measurement in the basis $\{|v_0\rangle, |v_1\rangle, ..., |v_{N-1}\rangle\}$. In fact, it leaves the first subsystem of n qubits in the post-measurement state $|v_x\rangle$ with probability $|\alpha_x|^2 = |\langle \psi | x \rangle|^2$. Furthermore, the output of the measurement, $x \in \{0, 1, ..., 2^n - 1\}$ is encoded in the post-measurement state $|x\rangle$ of the n ancilla qubits.

5.6.2 Projective Measurements with Ancillas

We now generalize the architecture in Fig. 5.4 to the balanced projective measurements introduced in Sec. 5.4. To see how, we focus here on the class of partial measurements of n' qubits in the computational basis, since, as seen in Sec. 5.4.2, by adding suitable pre- and post-measurement transformations, one can implement a general balanced measurement from such partial measurement. We will provide an example of this procedure at the end of this subsection.

A partial measurement of n' qubits in the computational basis can be implemented via a generalization of the architecture introduced in the previous subsection whereby only the second set of n' qubits, whose state is to be measured, are "copied" via a basis-copying circuit to the ancillas. Specifically, the measurement involves the introduction of n' ancilla qubits, which are used to encode the output index $y \in \{0, 1, ..., 2^{n'} - 1\}$. A basis-copying unitary "copies" only the second set of n' qubits as controlling qubits onto the n' ancillas. This amounts to a unitary transformation that maps each vector $|x\rangle \otimes |y\rangle \otimes |0\rangle = |x, y, 0\rangle$ – with

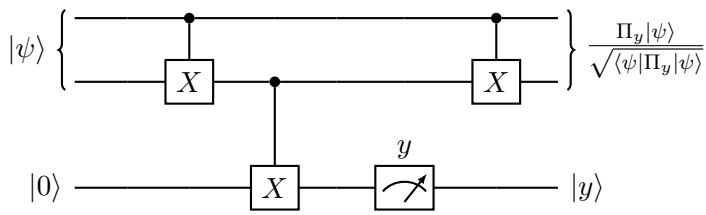


Figure 5.5: An ancilla-based implementation of the parity measurement introduced in Sec. 5.2.8.

$x \in \{0, 1, ..., 2^{n-n'} - 1\}$, $y \in \{0, 1, ..., 2^{n'} - 1\}$, and $|0\rangle$ being the initial ground state of the n' ancillas – into the state $|x, y, y\rangle$.

As an example, consider again the parity measurement $\{\Pi_0, \Pi_1\}$ introduced in Sec. 5.2.8. Since there are only two values for the measurement ($n' = 1$), it is sufficient add a single ancilla qubit. As detailed in Sec. 5.4.3, in order to implement this measurement, one can pre- and post-process the state to be measured with the change-of-basis unitaries illustrated in Fig. 5.2. Accordingly, as depicted in Fig. 5.5, the first step is to apply a CNOT gate to the two qubits being measured, which are initially in state $|\psi\rangle$. Then, one applies a basis-copying circuit from the second qubit to the ancilla, followed by a measurement of the ancilla. Note that the basis-copying circuit also amounts to a CNOT gate. Finally, the initial change-of-basis unitary is inverted with a last CNOT gate. It can be directly checked that the circuit in Fig. 5.5 indeed produces the output y and corresponding post-measurement state with the probability (5.19)-(5.20).

The outlined general approach to implement projective measurements with ancillas may not necessarily provide the most efficient circuit. For example, for the parity measurement discussed in the last paragraph, the circuit in Fig. 5.5 can be directly seen to be equivalent to that in Fig. 5.6, which requires only two CNOT gates. The operation of the circuit in Fig. 5.6 has the interesting interpretation that the ancilla qubit computes the parity – separately on each computational basis state – of the two qubits being measured via the two CNOT gates. In fact, if the two qubits being measured are in state $|x, y\rangle$, with $x, y \in \{0, 1\}$, the state of the ancilla qubit after the two CNOT gates is $|x \oplus y\rangle$.

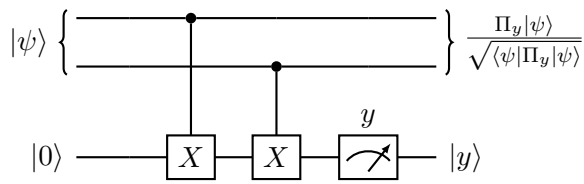


Figure 5.6: An equivalent implementation of the parity measurement with ancilla. Unlike the equivalent circuit in Fig. 5.5, here the ancilla qubit – initialized in the ground state – computes the parity of the two qubits being measured, separately for each computational basis state, via the two CNOTs.

5.6.3 Application to Quantum Error Correction

Let us now return to the problem of designing a decoding circuit for the quantum error correction code introduced in Sec. 5.5. As we have seen in Sec. 5.5.3, the decoder carries out the projective measurement $\{\Pi_{00}, \Pi_{01}, \Pi_{10}, \Pi_{11}\}$ with projection matrices in (5.53)-(5.56). According to the discussion in this section, this measurement can be implemented by introducing two ancilla qubits ($n' = 2$), since there are four possible outcomes. The resulting circuit is illustrated in Fig. 5.7, and is detailed next.

Generalizing the circuit in Fig. 5.6, the decoder takes as input the post-channel state, and computes the parity – in the computational basis – of the first and second pair of qubits in the post-channel state. Specifically, the first ancilla qubit measures the parity of the first pair, and the second ancilla qubit of the second pair. The outputs $(y_0, y_1) \in \{0,1\}^2$ of the measurement of the ancillas (in the computational basis) are then used to determine whether an X gate should be applied to the any of the three input qubits. Since it is used to "diagnose" the type of error that may have occurred on the encoded qubits, the output of the measurement of the ancillas is referred to as the **error syndrome**.

The advantage of introducing the ancillas in the circuit of Fig. 5.7 is that their post-measurement state encodes the transformation to be applied to the first three qubits to ensure error correction. In this regard, note that the shortcut notation X^{ab} in Fig. 5.7 indicates that an X gate is applied when $a = b = 1$, recovering the decoding rule described in Sec. 5.5. Accordingly, as long as the channel applies at

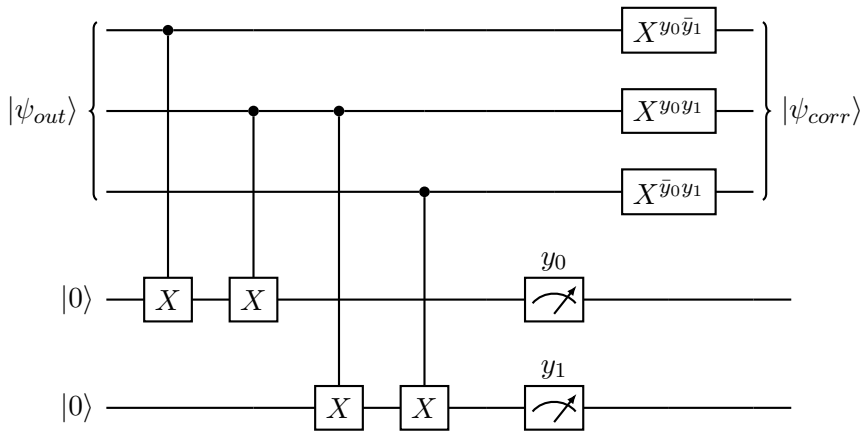


Figure 5.7: Decoder for the quantum error correction code described in Sec. 5.5. The decoder uses the output of the measurement encoded in the state of the two ancilla qubits (the last two qubits) in order to determine the operation to be applied on the encoded qubits (the first three qubits) at the next computation step.

most one bit flip, the corrected state $|\psi_{corr}\rangle$ equals the encoded state $|\psi_{in}\rangle = \alpha_0|000\rangle + \alpha_1|111\rangle$.

In closing this subsection, we note that it is also possible to implement quantum error correction without an explicit measurement of the ancillas through the use of three-qubit gates, namely Toffoli gates. Furthermore, when the goal is recovering the original qubit, and not the encoded state, it is also possible to avoid using ancilla qubits.

5.7 Positive Operator-Valued Measurements

As we have seen in the previous section, general projective measurements can be implemented by adding ancillas in ground state $|0\rangle$, applying an entangling operator, namely the basis-copying circuit, and then measuring the ancillas. In this section, we address the following question: What if we applied a more general entangling operator, i.e., an arbitrary unitary matrix, to the overall system including the ancillas, and then measured the ancillas (in a selective way)? As we will detail, this leads to the most general form of (selective) measurements, namely **positive operator-valued measurement (POVM)**.

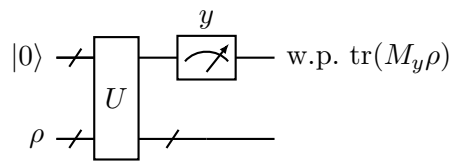


Figure 5.8: A POVM describes a situation in which the system of interest interact through a unitary U with ancilla qubits, initially in the ground state $|0\rangle$, and then the ancillas are measured (in a selective manner).

5.7.1 Deriving POVM Measurements

To derive POVMs, let us consider a system of n qubits with the addition of n' ancillas. The ancillas are initially in the ground state $|0\rangle$. If the system of n qubit is in state $|\psi\rangle$, the overall system is hence in the state $|0,\psi\rangle = |0\rangle \otimes |\psi\rangle$. Note that, unlike what we have done in the rest of this chapter, here we append the ancillas in front of the n-qubit state in order to simplify the derivations that follow. The setting under study is illustrated in Fig. 5.8.

Applying a unitary matrix U to the overall system results in the state

$$U|0,\psi\rangle = \begin{bmatrix} U_{00} & U_{01} & \cdots & U_{0,N'-1} \\ U_{10} & U_{11} & \cdots & U_{1,N'-1} \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ U_{N'-1,0} & U_{N'-1,1} & \cdots & U_{N'-1,N'-1} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} |\psi\rangle \\ 0 \\ \vdots \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \quad (5.60)$$

where the matrices U_{km}, with $k,m \in \{0,1,...,N'-1\}$, are of size $N \times N$, with $N = 2^n$, and we set $N' = 2^{n'}$. It follows that the output of the unitary operation is

$$U|0,\psi\rangle = \begin{bmatrix} U_{00}|\psi\rangle \\ U_{10}|\psi\rangle \\ \vdots \\ U_{N'-1,0}|\psi\rangle \end{bmatrix} = \sum_{y=0}^{N'-1} |y\rangle \otimes U_{y0}|\psi\rangle. \quad (5.61)$$

Furthermore, by the unitarity of matrix U, i.e., by the equality $U^\dagger U = I$, we have the condition

$$\sum_{y=0}^{N'-1} U_{y0}^\dagger U_{y0} = I, \quad (5.62)$$

where I is the $N \times N$ identity matrix.

Now, if we measure the ancillas in the computational basis, by the generalized Born rule, we get

$$\begin{aligned}\Pr[\text{measurement output equals } y] &= \langle\psi|U_{y0}^{\dagger}U_{y0}|\psi\rangle \\ &= \text{tr}(M_y\rho),\end{aligned} \tag{5.63}$$

where we have defined matrix $M_y = U_{y0}^{\dagger}U_{y0}$ and the density matrix $\rho = |\psi\rangle\langle\psi|$. Furthermore, the post-measurement (density) state is

$$\frac{U_{y0}\rho U_{y0}^{\dagger}}{\text{tr}(M_y\rho)}. \tag{5.64}$$

5.7.2 Defining a POVM

Generalizing the derivation above, a POVM is defined by a set of $N \times N$ positive semidefinite matrices M_y with $y \in \{0, 1, ..., N' - 1\}$, with N' generally different from N and possibly larger than N, such that the following condition – from (5.62) – applies

$$\sum_{y=0}^{N'-1} M_y = I. \tag{5.65}$$

A POVM stipulates that output y is observed with probability

$$\Pr[\text{measurement output equals } y] = \text{tr}(M_y\rho). \tag{5.66}$$

The post-measurement state is not uniquely specified by a POVM defined by matrices $\{M_y\}_{y=0}^{N'-1}$. However, by taking the positive semidefinite square root of M_y, i.e.,

$$M_y^{1/2} = \sum_{x=0}^{N-1} \sqrt{\lambda_{x,y}}|v_{x,y}\rangle\langle v_{x,y}| \tag{5.67}$$

where $M_y = \sum_{x=0}^{N-1} \lambda_{x,y}|v_{x,y}\rangle\langle v_{x,y}|$ is the eigendecomposition of M_y, one typically sets the post-measurement state to the density matrix

$$\frac{M_y^{1/2}\rho M_y^{1/2}}{\text{tr}(M_y\rho)}. \tag{5.68}$$

POVMs generalize projective measurements, which are obtained by choosing the positive semidefinite matrices M_y as projection matrices, i.e., by setting $M_y = \Pi_y$ (note that we have $\Pi_y^{1/2} = \Pi_y$).

5.7.3 POVM for Unambigous Quantum State Discrimination

In this subsection, we study an application of POVMs by focusing on quantum state detection. To this end, assume that, unbeknownst to us, the state of a quantum system can be either $|\psi_0\rangle$ or $|\psi_1\rangle$. If the vectors $|\psi_0\rangle$ and $|\psi_1\rangle$ are orthogonal, it is possible to distinguish them exactly (with probability 1) by using the standard von Neumann measurement defined by the projection matrices

$$\begin{aligned} \Pi_0 &= |\psi_0\rangle\langle\psi_0| \\ \Pi_1 &= |\psi_1\rangle\langle\psi_1| \\ \Pi_2 &= I - \Pi_0 - \Pi_1. \end{aligned} \tag{5.69}$$

Note that if there is a single qubit, the third projection matrix Π_2 is not necessary. If the true state is $|\psi_y\rangle$, with $y \in \{0, 1\}$, this measurement indeed returns y with probability $\mathrm{tr}(\Pi_y|\psi_y\rangle\langle\psi_y|) = 1$. What if states $|\psi_0\rangle$ and $|\psi_1\rangle$ are not orthogonal?

In this case, we can design a POVM such that, whenever a decision is made, the decision is correct; but it is allowed for the measurement to return a "don't know" decision. To this end, consider the POVM

$$\begin{aligned} M_0 &= a(I - |\psi_1\rangle\langle\psi_1|) \\ M_1 &= a(I - |\psi_0\rangle\langle\psi_0|) \\ M_2 &= I - M_0 - M_1, \end{aligned} \tag{5.70}$$

where $a = (1 + |\langle\psi_0|\psi_1\rangle|)^{-1}$.

By (5.66), if the true state is $|\psi_0\rangle$, the measurement returns $y = 0$ with probability

$$\begin{aligned} \mathrm{tr}(M_0|\psi_0\rangle\langle\psi_0|) &= a\langle\psi_0|(I - |\psi_1\rangle\langle\psi_1|)|\psi_0\rangle \\ &= a \cdot (1 - |\langle\psi_0|\psi_1\rangle|^2) = 1 - |\langle\psi_0|\psi_1\rangle|; \end{aligned} \tag{5.71}$$

it returns $y = 1$ with probability

$$\mathrm{tr}(M_1|\psi_0\rangle\langle\psi_0|) = a\langle\psi_0|(I - |\psi_0\rangle\langle\psi_0|)|\psi_0\rangle \tag{5.72}$$

$$= a \cdot (1 - 1) = 0; \tag{5.73}$$

and "don't know", i.e., $y = 2$, with probability

$$\mathrm{tr}(M_2|\psi_0\rangle\langle\psi_0|) = |\langle\psi_0|\psi_1\rangle|. \tag{5.74}$$

A similar situation occurs if the true state is $|\psi_1\rangle$.

We conclude that, with the designed POVM, there is no ambiguous detection, but a "declaration of ignorance" with probability $|\langle\psi_0|\psi_1\rangle|$: The more aligned the two vectors are, the more likely it is that the detector will not be able to make a definite decision.

Importantly, in order to obtain unambiguous state discrimination as described in this section, it is necessary to use a POVM and projective measurements are not sufficient. To see this, consider the special case of single-qubit states $|\psi_0\rangle$ and $|\psi_1\rangle$. A projective measurement in this setting could only produce one of two outputs, ruling out the possibility to include a "don't know" decision.

5.8 Quantum Channels

In the previous section we have introduced POVMs – the most general form of quantum measurement – by studying the setting in Fig. 5.8. In it, the quantum system of interest, encompassing n qubits in some state ρ, interacts with n' ancilla qubits through a general unitary transformation U, and then a *selective* measurement is made on the ancillas. Following the discussion in Sec. 3.4, the ancilla qubits may model the environment in which the quantum computer of n qubits operates. In this case, the unitary U accounts for the unwanted, entangling, interactions with the environment. Furthermore, the fact that the quantum computer does not have access to the environment can be accounted for by assuming that the ancillas, rather than being measured selectively as in Fig. 5.8, are measured **non-selectively** as shown in Fig. 5.9.

The setting in Fig. 5.9 – in which the system of interest interacts with "environment" qubits, initially in the ground state $|0\rangle$, through a unitary and then the environment qubits are measured non-selectively – defines a **quantum channel**. Quantum channels are used to model the impact of noise due to decoherence in quantum computers (see Sec. 3.4). More broadly, as we will further discuss below, quantum channels represent general quantum operations on a quantum state ρ that do not involve selective measurements.

From Sec. 5.7, we know that the state at the output of the unitary U in Fig. 5.9 is given by (5.61), which we rewrite here for convenience

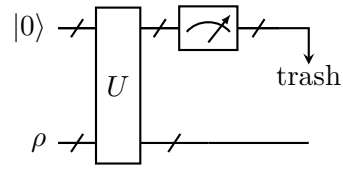


Figure 5.9: A quantum channel can be described as a setting in which the quantum system of interest, consisting of n qubits, interacts with n' ancilla, or "environment", qubits via a unitary U. The fact that the system does not have access to the environment is modelled via a non-selective measurement of the ancillas (i.e., the output of the measurement is discarded).

as

$$\sum_{y=0}^{N'-1} |y\rangle \otimes K_y|\psi\rangle, \tag{5.75}$$

where we have $N' = 2^{n'}$ and the $N \times N$ matrices K_y satisfy condition (5.62), i.e.,

$$\sum_{y=0}^{N'-1} K_y^\dagger K_y = I. \tag{5.76}$$

Unlike Sec. 5.7, we now perform a **non-selective** measurement of the ancillas. The outcome of this operation on the n qubits of interest can be formally described by the partial trace operation described in Sec. 3.6.

Before applying the partial trace, let us follow an equivalent and more direct argument by assuming that the ancillas are measured in the computational basis $\{|y\rangle\}_{y=0}^{N'-1}$. Recall from Sec. 3.6 that the output of a non-selective measurement does not depend on the specific choice of the orthonormal basis. By the generalized Born rule, from (5.75), we obtain the post-measurement state $K_y|\psi\rangle/\sqrt{p_y}$ with probability $p_y = \langle\psi|K_y^\dagger K_y|\psi\rangle$ for the system of n qubits. It follows that, from the viewpoint of the system of interest, which does not have access to the measurement outcome y, the state of the system is described by the

density matrix

$$\rho_{out} = \sum_{y=0}^{2^{n'}-1} p_y \frac{K_y|\psi\rangle\langle\psi|K_y^\dagger}{p_y} = \sum_{y=0}^{2^{n'}-1} K_y \rho K_y^\dagger, \tag{5.77}$$

with $\rho = |\psi\rangle\langle\psi|$.

This result can also be obtained by tracing out the ancillas – denoted as A – to account for the non-selective measurement of the ancillas in Fig. 5.9. In fact, using the definition (3.42) of partial trace, we compute the output state as

$$\begin{aligned} \rho_{out} &= \mathrm{tr}_A(U(|0\rangle\langle 0| \otimes \rho)U^\dagger) \\ &= \sum_{y=0}^{2^{n'}-1} (\langle y| \otimes I)(U(|0\rangle\langle 0| \otimes \rho)U^\dagger)(|y\rangle \otimes I) \qquad (5.78) \\ &= \sum_{y=0}^{2^{n'}-1} K_y \rho K_y^\dagger, \qquad (5.79) \end{aligned}$$

where we have used the equality $K_y = U_{y0} = (\langle y| \otimes I)U$, which follows from (5.61).

To summarize, a **quantum channel** operating on n qubits is defined by a set of $2^n \times 2^n$ matrices $\{K_y\}_{y=0}^{r-1}$, for some integer r, which satisfy the property (5.61), restated here as

$$\sum_{y=0}^{r-1} K_y^\dagger K_y = I. \tag{5.80}$$

The matrices K_y are known as **Kraus matrices**. Given an input state ρ, the output state produced by a quantum channel defined by Kraus matrices $\{K_y\}_{y=0}^{r-1}$ is given as

$$\rho_{out} = \sum_{y=0}^{r-1} K_y \rho K_y^\dagger = \mathcal{N}(\rho_{in}), \tag{5.81}$$

where the notation $\mathcal{N}(\cdot)$ is often used to describe the operation of the channel.

By (5.81), one can intuitively think of a quantum channel as a quantum operation that modifies the input density ρ to the (unnormalized) density $K_y \rho K_y^\dagger$ with probability p_y. Therefore, each Kraus matrix K_y can be interpreted as a different type of error that the channel causes on the quantum state ρ. Unless we have $r = 1$, quantum channels are generally **irreversible**, as they describe situations in which the system gets entangled with the "environment" causing information to be irretrievably lost.

An equivalent way to define a quantum channels $\rho_{out} = \mathcal{N}(\rho)$ is as follows. A quantum channel is a mapping $\rho_{out} = \mathcal{N}(\rho)$ from a density matrix ρ to a matrix ρ_{out} that is **linear, completely positive (CP), and trace preserving (TP)**. Therefore, quantum channels are also referred to as **CPTP operators**. Linearity is evident from the characterization (5.81). The TP property requires that the output state has unitary trace, i.e., $\mathrm{tr}(\rho_{out}) = 1$ – a necessary condition since the output ρ_{out} must be a density matrix. This property can be directly proved based on the condition (5.80). Finally, the CP condition means that, when applied on a subset of a larger system, the quantum channel yields a valid density, and hence a positive semidefinite matrix, for the whole system. This is a necessary condition to guarantee that, if the channel is applied to only to some qubits of a system, the resulting output matrix is still a valid density state.

Quantum channels, i.e., CPTP operators, include all quantum operations that do not involve a selective measurement, including trace and partial trace. In fact, CPTPs and POVMs – with the latter used to describe selective measurements – exhaust the set of *all* possible operations that can be applied to a quantum system. Examples of quantum channels include the following.

• **Quantum state preparation**: This is the process of preparing a quantum ensemble $\{p_x, |v_x\rangle\}$, i.e., a density matrix $\rho_{out} = \sum_x p_x |v_x\rangle\langle v_x|$. It can be described as a quantum channel with input $\rho = 1$ and Kraus operators $K_x = \sqrt{p_x}|v_x\rangle$, yielding the output state $\rho_{out} = \sum p_x |v_x\rangle\langle v_x|$.

• **Pauli channels**: Pauli channels are single-qubit channels that have Kraus matrices

$$K_0 = \sqrt{p_0} I, K_1 = \sqrt{p_1} X, K_2 = \sqrt{p_2} Y, K_3 = \sqrt{p_3} Z, \tag{5.82}$$

for $p_k \geq 0$ with $\sum_{k=0}^{3} p_k = 1$, yielding the output state

$$\rho_{out} = p_0\rho + p_1 X\rho X + p_2 Y\rho Y + p_3 Z\rho Z. \tag{5.83}$$

Single-qubit channels are practically important since most error models in quantum computing assume independent errors across qubits. Pauli channels make particularly clear the interpretation mentioned above of individual Kraus operators as describing the different types of errors that can occur on a qubit. In particular, in a Pauli channel, the different types of errors correspond to the application of X, Y, or Z operators to the qubit.

Pauli channels specialize to some important subclasses of channels, such as the bit-flip channel and the dephasing channel. The **bit-flip channel** applies X errors with some probability p, i.e.,

$$\rho_{out} = (1-p)\rho + pX\rho X, \tag{5.84}$$

where we can assume without loss of generality $p \leq 0.5$. (Otherwise, we can apply an X operator to ρ to obtain the same channel.) In contrast, **dephasing channels** apply Z errors with probability $p \leq 0.5$, i.e.,

$$\rho_{out} = (1-p)\rho + pZ\rho Z. \tag{5.85}$$

5.9 Conclusions

In this chapter, we have extended the formalism of quantum measurements to projective measurements and to POVMs, with the latter providing the most general form of quantum measurement. Throughout, we have emphasized quantum circuits that can implement such measurements via standard measurements in the computational basis. We have also highlighted two important applications: quantum error correction for projective measurements and quantum detection for POVMs. Finally, we have studied a general form of non-selective measurements, leading to the definition of quantum channels.

5.10 Recommended Resources

Projective measurements and POVMs are well explained in [3], [7]. Quantum error correction is a vast field, and the books [1], [3] provide

excellent introductions. Quantum communications and networking are covered by [7], [12].

5.11 Problems

1. Argue that, in order to implement a "gentle" projective measurement that leaves non-trivial subspaces of pre-measurement states unchanged, it is necessary to have $n \geq 2$ qubits.

2. For an observable O and two states $|\psi\rangle = \sum_x \sqrt{p_x}|x\rangle$ and $\rho = \sum_x p_x |x\rangle\langle x|$, show the relationship

$$\langle O \rangle_{|\psi\rangle} = \langle O \rangle_\rho + \sum_{x,y:x\neq y} \sqrt{p_x p_y} \langle x|O|y\rangle. \tag{5.86}$$

   Interpret this equality.

3. Consider the observables $X \otimes X$, $Y \otimes Y$, and $Z \otimes Z$, and show that the numerical outputs of their observations can be obtained by using either separable measurements or joint measurements in the Bell basis.

4. Derive the projective measurement that has the minimum error probability for the problem of distinguishing between two states ρ_0 and ρ_1.

5. Describe the measurement-based definition of the quantum entropy (see recommended resources).

6. Derive a necessary condition on the numbers k, n, and m of information qubits, encoded qubits, and types of errors, that is required for quantum error detection.

7. Describe a circuit that measures the observable $X \otimes X$ in a system with two qubits. Consider the implementation involving only the two qubits, as well as the implementation that includes ancilla qubits.

8. Describe a quantum error correction code, including encoder and decoder, for the channel that may flip the phase of at most one

out of three qubits. A phase flip corresponds to the application of a Pauli Z operator. [Hint: Phase flips correspond to bit flips with a suitable change of basis.]

9. Prove that the circuit in Fig. 5.1 implements a balanced projective measurement by calculating the probability of obtaining output y, as well as the corresponding post-measurement state.

10. Given a state $a|00\rangle + b|11\rangle$ with real numbers $a \geq b > 0$ such that the equality $a^2 + b^2 = 1$ holds, show that with probability $2b^2$ the POVM described by positive semidefinite matrices $M_0 = b^2/a^2|0\rangle\langle 0| + |1\rangle\langle 1|$ and $M_1 = I - M_0$ produces as post-measurement state (5.68) a fully entangled state.

11. Show that repeating a projective measurements returns the same result of the first measurement with probability 1 (when conditioned on the output of the first measurement), while this is not the case for more general POVMs.

12. Prove that a quantum channel is trace preserving.

13. Explain the following statement: A noiseless quantum channel is given by the unitary transformation $U = \sum_x |x\rangle\langle x|$, while a noiseless classical channel is a noisy quantum channel with Kraus operators $K_x = |x\rangle\langle x|$.

6

Quantum Machine Learning

6.1 Introduction

In this chapter, we introduce the topic of quantum machine learning. We start by presenting a taxonomy of approaches, and proceed with reviewing the key concepts of parametrized quantum circuit (PQC) and ansatz. With this background, as a preliminary step, we describe the variational quantum eigensolver (VQE), which is presented as a tool to address a specific class of combinatorial problems. VQEs share with quantum machine learning techniques the main driving idea of using classical optimization to minimize the expectation of a quantum observable as the cost function. We then overview probabilistic and deterministic machine learning models obtained from PQCs, with applications to unsupervised generative learning, as well as to supervised learning for regression and classification tasks. We conclude with further discussions regarding the choice of the PQC and the problem of data encoding onto quantum states, ending with some considerations on future directions for research.

6.2 What is Quantum Machine Learning?

Quantum computing algorithms, including the techniques reviewed in Chapter 4, have been traditionally designed by hand without imposing restrictions on the number of qubits and on the reliability of qubits, quantum gates, and quantum measurements. In practice, current quantum computers support a few tens of qubits, and projections are that in the near term the number of qubits will not exceed around 1000. Furthermore, quantum state preparation, quantum gates, and quantum measurements in real quantum computers are subject to decoherence and noise (see Sec. 3.4 and Sec. 5.8). This makes it necessary to implement forms of quantum error correction in order to emulate the noiseless operation assumed by the designed quantum algorithms. And this, in turn, further increases the number of necessary physical qubits to ensure the desired level of reliability (see Sec. 5.5).

Against this backdrop, **quantum machine learning** refers to an alternative design paradigm, illustrated in Fig. 6.1, based on the integration of a small-scale quantum circuit with a classical optimizer. Like classical machine learning, quantum machine learning follows an **inductive** methodology based on the following two-step approach:

- **Selection of the architecture of a parametric quantum circuit (PQC)**: The designer first selects the architecture of a PQC by specifying a sequence of parametrized quantum gates. Parametrized quantum gates may, for instance, include Pauli rotations whose angles are treated as free parameters that can be optimized. Overall, the operation of the PQC is defined by a unitary matrix $U(\theta)$, which is dependent on a vector of free parameters θ. The choice of the PQC should be ideally dictated by knowledge available to the designer about quantum algorithmic architectures that are well suited for the problem at hand. The step of selecting a PQC architecture mirrors the problem of choosing a neural network architecture in classical machine learning.

- **Parametric optimization**: The PQC implementing the unitary $U(\theta)$ is connected to a classical optimizer. The optimizer is fed measurements of the quantum state produced by the PQC, typ-

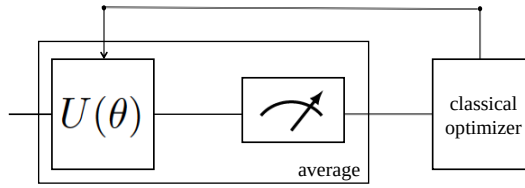


Figure 6.1: The high-level architecture of the quantum machine learning design methodology. A parametric quantum circuit (PQC) implementing a unitary matrix $U(\theta)$ is optimized via its vector of parameters, θ, based on measurements of the output of the PQC.

ically in the form of estimated expectations of observables; and it produces updates to the parameter vector θ. The updates are aimed at minimizing some cost function, which may depend also on training data. This parametric optimization step is also part of the classical machine learning methodology, in which the model parameters θ are optimized via gradient descent-based methods by targeting the minimization of the training loss.

The quantum machine learning framework depicted in Fig. 6.1 has a number of potential advantages over the standard approach of handcrafting quantum algorithms assuming fault-tolerant quantum computers:

- By keeping the quantum computer in the loop, the classical optimizer can directly account for the non-idealities and limitations of the available quantum resources.

- If the PQC $U(\theta)$ is sufficiently flexible and the classical optimizer sufficiently effective, the approach may automatically design well-performing quantum algorithms that would have been hard to conceive "by hand".

		data C	**processing** Q
data	C	CC	CQ
generation	Q	QC	QQ

Table 6.1: Taxonomy of machine learning settings as a function of the type of data and processing (C=classical, Q=quantum).

6.3 A Taxonomy of Quantum Machine Learning

Unlike classical machine learning, in which data and processing are classical, in quantum machine learning data and/or processing are quantum. The four possible scenarios are summarized in Table 6.1, and are reviewed in this section.

The **classical data and classical processing (CC)** case prescribes the optimization of a standard machine learning model, e.g., of a neural network, via a classical optimizer. As illustrated in Fig. 6.2, a classical machine learning model implements a parametrized function $h(x|\theta)$ mapping classical input data x to an output. The classical optimizer minimizes some cost function over vector θ based on classical data. For example, in supervised learning, classical data consist of pairs of inputs and corresponding desired outputs. Moreover, the cost function is given by the training loss, which measures how well the predictions of the outputs produced by function $f(x|\theta)$ match the desired outputs in the available data.

Currently, the most common quantum machine learning setting is characterized by **classical data and quantum processing (CQ)**. In this case, as illustrated in Fig. 6.3, a quantum model is typically defined by a PQC that implements a unitary transformation $U(x, \theta)$. The unitary $U(x, \theta)$ depends on both classical input x and model parameter vector θ. The input to the PQC is a set of qubits in the ground state $|0\rangle$, and the output state produced by the PQC is given by the so-called quantum embedding (of the classical data x)

$$|\psi(x, \theta)\rangle = U(x, \theta)|0\rangle. \tag{6.1}$$

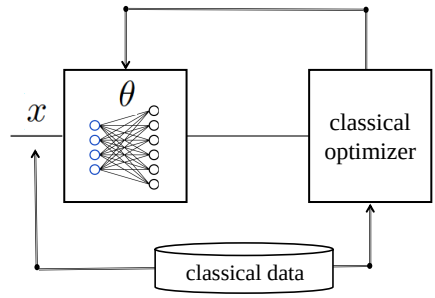


Figure 6.2: An illustration of classical machine learning, in which both data and processing are classical.

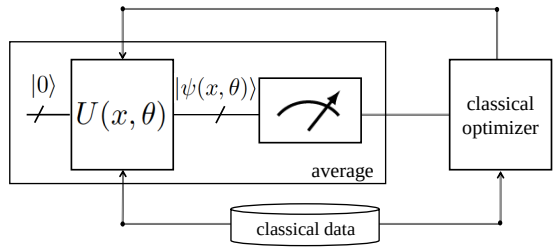


Figure 6.3: An illustration of the "CQ" setting of quantum machine learning, in which data are classical and processing is quantum.

The classical optimizer minimizes some cost function over the model parameter vector θ. The cost function measures how well the output of the measurement of the quantum state (6.1) match the available classical data. As a result, the cost function can be expressed in terms of the expectation of an observable for the quantum embedding $|\psi(x,\theta)\rangle$. Estimating the expectation of the given cost-defining observable requires running the PQC multiple times in order to evaluating an empirical average.

As illustrated in Fig. 6.4, with **quantum data and classical processing (QC)**, the learner has access to quantum data. Quantum data consist of a collection of quantum systems, each in some density state. Quantum data may be produced by a quantum sensors and stored in a quantum memory – with both quantum sensing and quantum

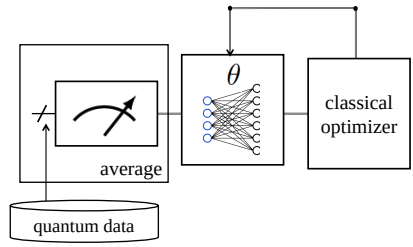


Figure 6.4: An illustration of the "QC" setting of quantum machine learning, in which data are quantum and processing is classical.

storage being two active areas of research. In the QC case, quantum data are first measured, and then the classical measurement outputs are processed by a classical machine learning model. QC machine learning may be applied to quantum tomography, which is the problem of inferring properties of a quantum state based on measurement results.

In the **quantum data and quantum processing (QQ)** case, as depicted in Fig. 6.5, quantum data are generally processed by a PQC. Furthermore, the cost function is typically evaluated within the quantum computer by comparing, using a suitable quantum circuit (see, e.g., Sec. 3.2.5), the output of the PQC with target quantum data. An instance of this case is given by **quantum generative adversarial networks**, in which the quantum loss is computed via a detector that attempts to distinguish real quantum data from quantum states generated by the PQC. Another example is provided by **quantum variational autoencoders**, which aim at compressing a quantum state into a smaller set of qubits. We refer to the recommended resources (Sec. 6.12) for pointers to the literature.

In this chapter, we will focus exclusively on the CQ case, which appears to be better studied and more suitable for engineering applications. That said, the discussion in the next section regarding PQCs is also relevant for the QQ solutions.

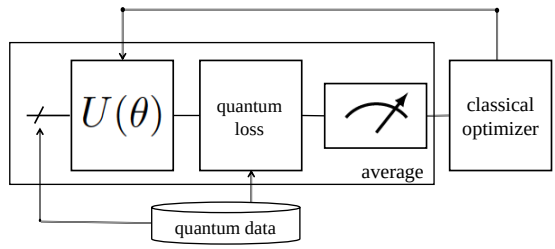


Figure 6.5: An illustration of the "QQ" setting of quantum machine learning, in which data are quantum and processing is quantum.

6.4 Ansatz and Parametrized Quantum Circuit

As discussed in the previous section, at the core of quantum machine learning methods are PQCs, which are the topic of this section.

A PQC implements a unitary transformation $U(\theta)$ whose operation on n qubits depends on a tunable (classical) parameter vector θ consisting of D real numbers. As seen in the previous section, in the CQ case, the unitary may also depend on input data x, and we will discuss this situation in the context of supervised learning in Sec. 6.8. The unitary $U(\theta)$ is typically specified as a sequence of one- or two-qubit gates, with each gate possibly dependent on the parameter θ. For feasibility, the number of gates should be polynomial in the number of qubits and not in the size of the Hilbert space, so that the number of gates does not grow exponentially with the number of qubits.

The choice of the PQC architecture as a sequence of specific gates is akin to the choice of the **model class** in classical machine learning, e.g., of a neural network architecture. In quantum machine learning, we refer to the architecture of the PQC as the **ansatz**. The term comes from the German word used for "approach" or "attempt". As for the model class in machine learning, one should choose the ansatz, if possible, based on domain knowledge. For instance, in quantum chemistry problems, there are known algorithmic structures that are known to reflect well the nature of certain phenomena.

In the rest of this section, we review typical ansatzes by proceeding in order of complexity, and hence also of expressivity, of the resulting PQC.

Specifically, we first review parametrized single-qubit gates and the mean-field ansatz; then we describe the more complex hardware-efficient ansatz; and finally we discuss parametrized multi-qubit gates.

6.4.1 Parametrized Single-Qubit Gates

The most common type of parametrized quantum gates is given by single-qubit **Pauli rotation matrices**. A Pauli P-rotation matrix $R_P(\theta)$, with $P \in \{X, Y, Z\}$ is a unitary matrix whose generator is given by $\theta/2 \cdot P$, i.e.,

$$R_P(\theta) = \exp\left(-i\frac{\theta}{2}P\right) = \cos\left(\frac{\theta}{2}\right) I - i \sin\left(\frac{\theta}{2}\right) P, \tag{6.2}$$

where θ is a real parameter (see Sec. 1.4.5 and Appendix A). The parameter θ is also known as the **rotation angle** for the gate $R_P(\theta)$. The three Pauli rotations are summarized in Table 6.2.

By (6.2), we have the equalities

$$R_X(-\pi) = iX, \tag{6.3}$$

$$R_Y(-\pi) = iY, \tag{6.4}$$

and

$$R_Z(-\pi) = iZ. \tag{6.5}$$

Therefore, apart from a global phase, the Pauli rotations recover as special cases, i.e., for a specific choice of the rotation angle θ, the Pauli gates X, Y, and Z.

A **general parametrized single-qubit gate** can be expressed, apart from a global phase, as the following cascade of two types of Pauli rotations

$$R(\theta^1, \theta^2, \theta^3) = R_P(\theta^1) R_{P'}(\theta^2) R_P(\theta^3), \tag{6.6}$$

where $P' \neq P$ with $P, P' \in \{X, Y, Z\}$. A typical choice is $P = Z$ and $P' = Y$. The general single-qubit gate (6.6) is specified by the three parameters, or rotation angles, θ^1, θ^2, and θ^3.

Single-qubit gates can be applied in parallel to the qubits of a quantum system. To indicate the qubit $k \in \{0, 1, ..., n-1\}$ to which

Pauli rotation	definition
$R_X(\theta)$	$\exp\left(-i\frac{\theta}{2}X\right) = \begin{bmatrix} \cos\left(\frac{\theta}{2}\right) & -i\sin\left(\frac{\theta}{2}\right) \\ -i\sin\left(\frac{\theta}{2}\right) & \cos\left(\frac{\theta}{2}\right) \end{bmatrix}$
$R_Y(\theta)$	$\exp\left(-i\frac{\theta}{2}Y\right) = \begin{bmatrix} \cos\left(\frac{\theta}{2}\right) & -\sin\left(\frac{\theta}{2}\right) \\ \sin\left(\frac{\theta}{2}\right) & \cos\left(\frac{\theta}{2}\right) \end{bmatrix}$
$R_Z(\theta)$	$\exp\left(-i\frac{\theta}{2}Z\right) = \begin{bmatrix} \cos\left(\frac{\theta}{2}\right) - i\sin\left(\frac{\theta}{2}\right) & 0 \\ 0 & \cos\left(\frac{\theta}{2}\right) + i\sin\left(\frac{\theta}{2}\right) \end{bmatrix}$

Table 6.2: Single-quit Pauli rotations are the most commonly used parametrized gates.

a single-qubit gate is applied, it is common to add subscript k to the notation for the gate. As an example, the notation Z_k describes a unitary that applies the Pauli Z gate only on the kth qubit. This transformation amounts to a Pauli string containing all identity matrices I, of dimension 2×2, except for the position k, where we have the Pauli operator Z, i.e.,

$$Z_k = \underbrace{I \otimes \cdots \otimes I}_{k-1} \otimes Z \otimes \underbrace{I \otimes \cdots \otimes I}_{n-k}. \tag{6.7}$$

Similarly, we can write

$$R_k(\theta_k^1, \theta_k^2, \theta_k^3) = \underbrace{I \otimes \cdots \otimes I}_{k-1} \otimes R(\theta_k^1, \theta_k^2, \theta_k^3) \otimes \underbrace{I \otimes \cdots \otimes I}_{n-k} \tag{6.8}$$

for a general single-qubit gate with parameters $(\theta_k^1, \theta_k^2, \theta_k^3)$ applied to the kth qubit.

6.4.2 Mean-Field Ansatz

An ansatz $U(\theta)$ that uses only single-qubit gates is known as a **mean-field ansatz**. As illustrated in Fig. 6.6, the mean-field ansatz defines unitaries of the form

$$\begin{aligned} U(\theta) &= R(\theta_0^1, \theta_0^2, \theta_0^3) \otimes \cdots \otimes R(\theta_{n-1}^1, \theta_{n-1}^2, \theta_{n-1}^3) \\ &= \prod_{k=0}^{n-1} R_k(\theta_k^1, \theta_k^2, \theta_k^3), \end{aligned} \tag{6.9}$$

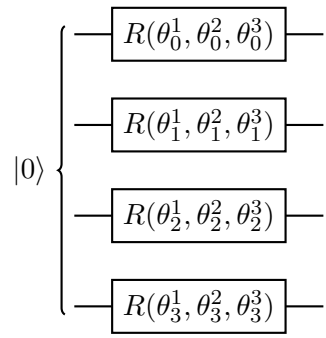


Figure 6.6: The mean-field ansatz consists of general single-qubit gates applied in parallel to the n qubits, which are initially in the ground state $|0\rangle$.

with $(\theta_k^1, \theta_k^2, \theta_k^3)$ for $k \in \{0, 1, ..., n-1\}$ being scalar parameters. Overall, the parameter vector $\theta = [\theta_0^1, \theta_0^2, \theta_0^3, ..., \theta_{n-1}^1, \theta_{n-1}^2, \theta_{n-1}^3]^T$ contains $D = 3n$ parameters.

Given the input state $|0\rangle$, a PQC following the mean-field ansatz outputs the separable state

$$U(\theta)|0\rangle = R(\theta_0^1, \theta_0^2, \theta_0^3)|0\rangle \otimes \cdots \otimes R(\theta_{n-1}^1, \theta_{n-1}^2, \theta_{n-1}^3)|0\rangle, \qquad (6.10)$$

where we have written as $|0\rangle$ both the multi-qubit ground state and the corresponding single-qubit states with some abuse of notation.

While simple, the mean-field ansatz may be sufficient for some applications. This may be the case, for instance, if the desired output of a computation is a vector in the computational basis. In fact, a PQC following the mean-field ansatz can produce all possible vectors in the computational basis. This result can be obtained by setting $\theta_k^1 = 0$ and $\theta_k^3 = 0$ for all qubits $k \in \{0, 1, ..., n-1\}$, and by choosing parameters θ_k^2 as either $\theta_k^2 = 0$ or $\theta_k^2 = \pi$ to encode the two computational basis vectors.

More generally, however, the solution of many practical problems can benefit from ansatzes that can produce entanglement among the qubits. This can be done by introducing entangling, multi-qubit, gates in the PQC, hence moving beyond the mean-field ansatz.

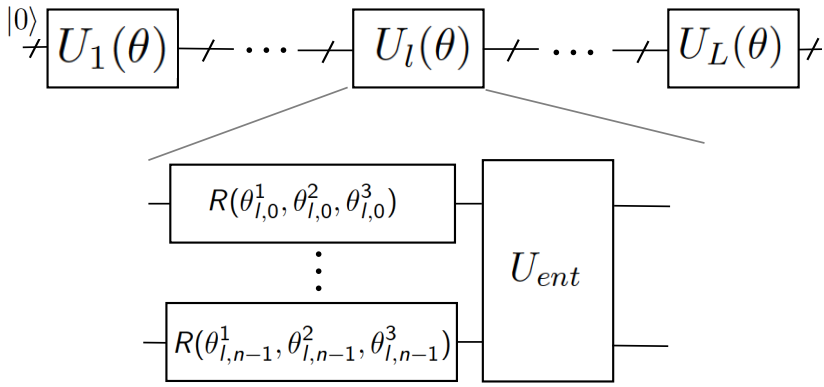


Figure 6.7: The hardware-efficient ansatz consists of L layers, each encompassing general single-qubit gates applied in parallel to the n qubits and a fixed entangling circuit U_{ent}. The qubits are initially in the ground state $|0\rangle$.

6.4.3 Hardware-Efficient Ansatz

Moving one level up along the complexity axis for ansatzes, the **hardware-efficient ansatz** includes both parametrized single-qubit gates and a **fixed entangling unitary** U_{ent}, which does not depend on the parameter vector θ. As detailed below, the entangling unitary U_{ent} typically consist of CNOT or CZ gates (see Sec. 2.6.4). The use of a fixed entangling unitary is for simplicity of implementation, since two-qubit gates are generally hard to implement on quantum computers. This motivation justifies the name "hardware-efficient" for this ansatz.

Specifically, as illustrated in Fig. 6.7, the hardware-efficient ansatz prescribes PQCs that implement a cascade of L layers of unitaries as in

$$U(\theta) = U_L(\theta) \cdot U_{L-1}(\theta) \cdots U_1(\theta), \tag{6.11}$$

where each unitary matrix $U_l(\theta)$ at the lth layer can be expressed as

$$U_l(\theta) = U_{ent} \left(R(\theta^1_{l,0}, \theta^2_{l,0}, \theta^3_{l,0}) \otimes \cdots \otimes R(\theta^1_{l,n-1}, \theta^2_{l,n-1}, \theta^3_{l,n-1}) \right), \tag{6.12}$$

with $(\theta^1_{l,k}, \theta^2_{l,k}, \theta^3_{l,k})$ for $k \in \{0, 1, ..., n-1\}$. The parameter vector θ hence includes $D = 3nL$ parameters.

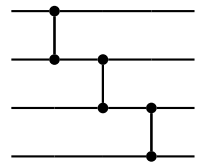


Figure 6.8: A linear entangling circuit U_{ent} for $n = 4$ qubits implemented via CZ gates.

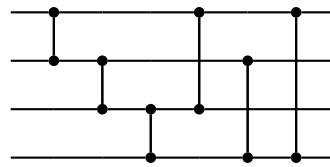


Figure 6.9: A full entangling circuit U_{ent} for $n = 4$ qubits implemented via CZ gates.

By (6.11)-(6.12), a PQC following the hardware-aware ansatz applies, at each layer l, separate single-qubit gates to all the n qubits, as in the mean-field ansatz, followed by a fixed entangling unitary U_{ent}. The entangling unitary U_{ent} is typically implemented using linear or full entangling circuits:

- **Linear entangling circuits** implement two-qubit gates between successive qubits. The example in Fig. 6.8 uses CZ gates, and it can be expressed as

$$U_{ent} = \prod_{k=0}^{n-2} C^Z_{k,k+1}, \tag{6.13}$$

  where $C^Z_{k,k+1}$ is the CZ gate between qubits k and $k+1$.

- **Full entangling circuits** implement two-qubit gates between all pairs of qubits, as illustrated in Fig. 6.9 with CZ gates.

In this regard, we observe that CZ gates have the advantage over CNOT gates that they can be applied in any order since they commute.

The hardware-efficient ansatz is generic, and it is often deemed to play a similar role to fully connected classical neural networks in the

design of quantum machine learning. That said, it is important to stress that a hardware-efficient ansatz does not have analogous properties to fully connected classical neural networks when it comes to dependence on model parameters. Notably, in fully connected classical neural networks, one has significant freedom in optimizing the connectivity between neurons by designing the individual synaptic weights are biases. In contrast, in the hardware-efficient ansatz, one can control only the rotations applied to each individual qubit, and dependencies among qubits are dictated by fixed entangling circuits.

6.4.4 Parametrized Two-Qubit Gates

At a higher level of complexity with respect to the hardware-efficient ansatz are PQCs that include also parametrized two-qubit gates. In this subsection, we describe two common types of parametrized two-qubit gates, namely parametrized controlled gates and two-qubit Pauli rotations.

Parametrized two-qubit controlled gates: Using the notation introduced in Sec. 2.6.4, parametrized two-qubit controlled gates are of the form $C_{jk}^{U(\theta)}$, where j is the index of controlling qubit, k is the index of the controlled qubit, and $U(\theta)$ is a parametrized single-qubit gate. Considering for simplicity of notation qubit 0 as the controlling qubit and qubit 1 as the controlled qubit, we can write (cf. (2.57))

$$C_{01}^{U(\theta)} = |0\rangle\langle 0| \otimes I + |1\rangle\langle 1| \otimes U(\theta). \tag{6.14}$$

Therefore, on the branch of the computation in which the controlling qubit has state $|0\rangle$, no operation is applied to controlled qubit; while, on the branch in which the controlling qubit has state $|1\rangle$, the parametrized single-qubit gate $U(\theta)$ is applied.

Instances of parametrized two-qubit gates include the **parametrized CNOT gate**

$$\mathrm{CNOT}_{jk}(\theta) = C_{jk}^{R_X(\theta)}, \tag{6.15}$$

where the controlled single-qubit gate is a Pauli X-rotation $R_X(\theta)$; and the **parametrized CZ gate**

$$\mathrm{CZ}_{jk}(\theta) = C_{jk}^{R_Z(\theta)}, \tag{6.16}$$

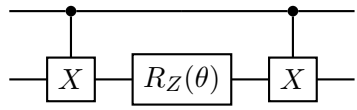


Figure 6.10: An implementation of the Pauli ZZ-rotation gate

where the controlled single-qubit gate is a Pauli Z rotation $R_Z(\theta)$. Note that, by (6.3)-(6.5), the parametrized CNOT and CZ gates recover the standard CNOT and CZ gates by setting $\theta = -\pi$, apart from a phase term.

Two-qubit Pauli rotations: For a system with two qubits, a two-qubit Pauli PQ-rotation is defined as the unitary matrix

$$R_{PQ}(\theta) = \exp\left(-i\frac{\theta}{2}(P \otimes Q)\right), \tag{6.17}$$

where P and Q are selected as one of the four Pauli operators $\{I, X, Y, Z\}$. A common example is the **Pauli ZZ-rotation gate** defined by the unitary

$$R_{ZZ}(\theta) = \exp\left(-i\frac{\theta}{2}Z \otimes Z\right). \tag{6.18}$$

Despite the presence of the product $P \otimes Q$ in (6.17), two-qubit Pauli rotations are generally not separable. In this regard, note that we have the equality $R_{ZZ}(-\pi) = i(Z \otimes Z)$, so that with the special choice of $\theta = -\pi$ the gate $R_{ZZ}(-\pi)$ is separable, while this is not the case in general. For any value of θ, the Pauli ZZ-rotation can be implemented as the cascade of CNOT, Pauli Z-rotation, and CNOT gate depicted in Fig. 6.10.

6.5 Variational Quantum Eigensolver

In this section, we describe a first application of the methodology illustrated in Fig. 6.1. In it, the parameter vector θ of a PQC is designed via a classical optimizer that is fed measurements of the PQC's output state. Specifically, we introduce the variational quantum eigensolver (VQE) as a tool to address a class of binary combinatorial optimization problems via the approach depicted in Fig. 6.1. Broader applications of VQEs will be also mentioned later in this section.

While VQEs are not data-driven, and hence may not qualify as "machine learning", they serve as a useful stepping stone to describe quantum machine learning applications. In fact, VQEs optimize the model parameter θ by minimizing the expectation of an observable under the quantum state produced by the PQC. As we will see in the next sections, this approach is common to many quantum machine learning methods.

6.5.1 Quadratic Unconstrained Binary Optimization

A **quadratic unconstrained binary optimization (QUBO)** problem can be formulated as the combinatorial optimization

$$\min_{\tilde{x}\in\{-1,1\}^n} \left\{ f(\tilde{x}) = \sum_{k=0}^{n-1}\sum_{j=0}^{k-1} a_{k,j}\tilde{x}_k\tilde{x}_j + \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} b_k\tilde{x}_k \right\} \tag{6.19}$$

with coefficients $\{a_{k,j}, b_k\}$. QUBO has a wide range of applications from finance and economics to machine learning. The exact solution of a QUBO generally requires a search over the exponentially large space, in n, of the binary optimization vector $\tilde{x}$. We will assume for simplicity that the problem has a single optimum solution $\tilde{x}^* \in \{-1, 1\}^n$.

Problem (6.19) can be equivalently formulated as an optimization over a binary vector $x \in \{0, 1\}^n$. To this end, we can create a one-to-one map between each binary string $x \in \{0, 1\}^n$ and the corresponding signed binary string $\tilde{x} \in \{-1, 1\}^n$ by setting $\tilde{x}_k = -1$ for $x_k = 1$ and $\tilde{x}_k = 1$ for $x_k = 0$ for $k \in \{0, 1, ..., n-1\}$. The resulting mapping between the two vectors is hence given by the entry-wise equality

$$\tilde{x}_k = 1 - 2x_k \tag{6.20}$$

for $k \in \{0, 1, ..., n-1\}$. We will write this assignment for short as $\tilde{x} = 1 - 2x$, in which the operations are applied element-wise.

6.5.2 QUBO Objective as a Quantum Observable

In order to address the QUBO problem (6.19) with a PQC, we start by expressing the objective function $f(\cdot)$ in terms of a quantum observable F on n qubits. As we will see in the next subsections, the main idea

underlying VQEs is to design the PQC to output n qubits in a state that (approximately) minimizes the expectation of the observable F.

The objective function $f(\cdot)$ can be associated with the following observable defined on n qubits

$$F = \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \sum_{j=0}^{k-1} a_{k,j} Z_k Z_j + \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} b_k Z_k, \tag{6.21}$$

which is also known as the **Ising Hamiltonian**. We recall from the previous section that the matrix Z_k is defined as in (6.7). This observable is the sum of $n(n-1)/2 + n$ observables, each given by a Pauli string consisting of Pauli operators $\{I, Z\}$. Each individual observable in (6.21) corresponds to the term in (6.19) obtained by replacing the Pauli string Z_k with the binary variable $\tilde{x}_k$.

The association between objective function $f(\cdot)$ in (6.19) and the observable F in (6.21) has the following properties:

- **Eigenvectors as solutions**: The observable F has eigenvectors given by the vectors $\{|x\rangle\}_{x=0}^{2^n-1}$ of the computational basis. Each eigenvector $|x\rangle$ can be thus associated with a possible solution $\tilde{x} = 1 - 2x$ of the QUBO problem.

- **Eigenvalues as objective function values**: Each eigenvector $|x\rangle$ has corresponding eigenvalue $f(\tilde{x})$, with $\tilde{x} = 1 - 2x$, i.e.,

$$F|x\rangle = f(\tilde{x})|x\rangle. \tag{6.22}$$

Accordingly, the value $f(\tilde{x})$ of the objective function at any candidate solution $\tilde{x} \in \{-1, 1\}^n$ can be computed by evaluating the eigenvalue of the observable F corresponding to the eigenvector $|x\rangle$ with $\tilde{x} = 1 - 2x$.

To prove the key equality (6.22), note that the eigendecomposition of the Pauli Z operator implies the equalities

$$Z_k Z_j |x\rangle = \tilde{x}_k \tilde{x}_j |x\rangle \text{ and } Z_k |x\rangle = \tilde{x}_k |x\rangle, \tag{6.23}$$

where $\tilde{x}_k$ is the kth element of vector $\tilde{x} = 1 - 2x$. It follows that we

have

$$\begin{aligned} F|x\rangle &= \sum_{k=0}^{n-1}\sum_{j=0}^{k-1} a_{k,j}\left(Z_k Z_j|x\rangle\right) + \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} b_k Z_k|x\rangle \\ &= \sum_{k=0}^{n-1}\sum_{j=0}^{k-1} a_{k,j}\tilde{x}_k\tilde{x}_j|x\rangle + \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} b_k\tilde{x}_k|x\rangle \\ &= f(\tilde{x})|x\rangle. \end{aligned} \tag{6.24}$$

6.5.3 QUBO Minimization as a Minimum-Eigenvalue Problem

Given the equality (6.22), the minimum eigenvalue of the observable F corresponds to the minimum value $f(\tilde{x}^*)$ of the QUBO problem. It is a well-known result from linear algebra that the minimum eigenvalue of a Hermitian matrix can be obtained by solving the problem

$$\min_{|\psi\rangle}\langle\psi|F|\psi\rangle \tag{6.25}$$

over all possible normalized 2^n vectors $|\psi\rangle$. Therefore, the QUBO problem can be equivalently solved by addressing the **minimum-eigenvalue problem**

$$\min_{|\psi\rangle}\langle\psi|F|\psi\rangle \tag{6.26}$$

in the sense that we have the equalities

$$\min_{|\psi\rangle}\langle\psi|F|\psi\rangle = \min_{\tilde{x}\in\{-1,1\}^n} f(\tilde{x}) = f(\tilde{x}^*). \tag{6.27}$$

Moreover, the optimal solution $|\psi^*\rangle$ of problem (6.26) provides, by (6.22), the solution of the QUBO problem, since we have the equality $|\psi^*\rangle = |x^*\rangle$ with $\tilde{x}^* = 1 - 2x^*$.

6.5.4 QUBO Minimization as a Minimization of the Expected Value of an Observable

The discussion in the previous subsection does not provide direct insights into how the minimum eigenvalue problem (6.26) can be practically addressed using a quantum computer. To discuss this important point, let us consider the measurement of the observable F under the state

$|\psi\rangle$ produced by a quantum algorithm. (In the next subsection, we will assume this state to be the output of the PQC.) Since the computational basis is an eigenbasis of F, measuring observable F amounts to performing a standard measurement (see Sec. 5.3). This measurement returns the eigenvalue $f(\tilde{x})$ with probability $\langle x|F|x\rangle$, where $\tilde{x} = 1 - 2x$.

Suppose now that we perform multiple measurements of the observable F by producing the state $|\psi\rangle$ multiple times. Given a state $|\psi\rangle = \sum_{x=0}^{2^n-1} \alpha_x |x\rangle$ of the n qubits, the expectation of the observable F is given by

$$\langle F\rangle_{|\psi\rangle} = \langle\psi|F|\psi\rangle = \sum_{x=0}^{2^n-1} |\alpha_x|^2 f(\tilde{x} = 1 - 2x). \tag{6.28}$$

Therefore, the expectation is a weighted average of all the values $f(\tilde{x} = 1-2x)$ of the objective function, with weight given by the corresponding amplitude $|\alpha_x|^2$ of the input state.

The discussion in the previous paragraph implies that the minimum value of the expectation $\langle F\rangle_{|\psi\rangle}$ is attained when the amplitudes α_x of the input state $|\psi\rangle$ in the computational basis are all equal to 0 except for the vector $|x^*\rangle$ corresponding to the optimal solution $\tilde{x}^* = 1 - 2x^*$ of the QUBO problem. This follows directly from the fact that $f(\tilde{x}^*)$ is the (unique) minimum value of the objective function.

The problem of minimizing the expectation $\langle F\rangle_{|\psi\rangle} = \langle\psi|F|\psi\rangle$ is equivalent to the minimum-eigenvalue problem (6.26). Therefore, the QUBO problem can be equivalently addressed by searching for the quantum state $|\psi\rangle$ that minimizes the expectation $\langle F\rangle_{|\psi\rangle}$, i.e., by addressing the problem

$$\min_{|\psi\rangle} \langle F\rangle_{|\psi\rangle}. \tag{6.29}$$

6.5.5 Variational Quantum Eigensolver

The key idea underlying VQEs is to replace the optimization over state $|\psi\rangle$ in (6.29) with an optimization over the parameters θ of the PQC. Specifically, as illustrated in Fig. 6.11, the VQE design methodology starts off by assuming a given ansatz for the PQC implementing a parametrized unitary $U(\theta)$. The PQC produces the parametrized

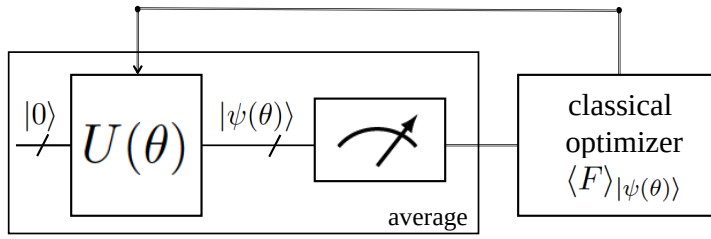


Figure 6.11: Illustration of the operation of a VQE. The classical optimizer aims at minimizing the expected value $\langle F \rangle_{\psi(\theta)\rangle} = \langle \psi(\theta)|F|\psi(\theta)\rangle$ of the observable F.

quantum state

$$|\psi(\theta)\rangle = U(\theta)|0\rangle. \tag{6.30}$$

For any vector θ, the expected value of the observable F is given by $\langle F \rangle_{|\psi(\theta)\rangle} = \langle \psi(\theta)|F|\psi(\theta)\rangle$. The goal of the classical optimizer in Fig. 6.11 is to use estimates of the expected value $\langle F \rangle_{|\psi(\theta)\rangle}$ to address the problem of minimizing $\langle F \rangle_{|\psi(\theta)\rangle}$ over vector θ, i.e.,

$$\min_{\theta} \left\{ L(\theta) = \langle F \rangle_{|\psi(\theta)\rangle} = \langle \psi(\theta)|F|\psi(\theta)\rangle = \langle 0|U(\theta)^{\dagger} F U(\theta)|0\rangle \right\}. \tag{6.31}$$

The solution of the VQE problem (6.31) generally provides an upper bound on the minimum value of the cost function of the QUBO problem, i.e.,

$$\min_{\theta} L(\theta) \geq \min_{|\psi\rangle} \langle \psi|F|\psi\rangle = f(\tilde{x}^*), \tag{6.32}$$

and tightness of the bound depends on the flexibility of the ansatz underlying the PQC $U(\theta)$. In fact, if there exists a model parameter θ^* such that the PQC produces the optimal state, i.e., such that we have $|\psi(\theta^*)\rangle = |x^*\rangle$, the solution of the VQE problem coincides with the optimal solution of the QUBO problem. As we discussed in the previous section, this is the case even with a simple mean-field ansatz involving only Pauli Y-rotations, since the latter can produce any vector in the computational basis. That said, in practice, exact optimization of problem (6.31) is not possible, and hence one is not guaranteed to

recover the optimal solution of the QUBO problem. We will discuss solutions methods in the next subsection.

Having found a model parameter θ that approximately solves problem (6.31), how can one extract a solution for the original QUBO problem? If the goal is merely to compute the minimum value $f(\tilde{x}^*)$ of the objective function, an estimate of the optimal objective $f(\tilde{x}^*)$ can be obtained by estimating the expectation $\langle F \rangle_{|\psi(\theta^*)\rangle}$ for the optimized parameters θ^*. As we recall in the next subsection, this requires making multiple measurements from a number of runs of the PQC. Approximating the solution $\tilde{x}^*$ is instead possible by making a single standard measurement of the state $|\psi(\theta^*)\rangle$. In fact, by Born's rule, such a measurement returns a vector $|x\rangle$ in the computational basis, whose corresponding signed vector $\tilde{x} = 1 - 2x$ can be taken to be an approximation of the optimal solution $\tilde{x}^*$. (In this regard, it has been pointed out that, if the goal is estimating the solution $\tilde{x}^*$, optimizing some quantile of the distribution of the observable F may be preferable to optimizing the expected value as done by the standard VQE.)

6.5.6 Addressing the VQE Optimization Problem

In order to address the VQE problem (6.31), the classical optimizer should first be able to estimate the expected value $\langle F \rangle_{|\psi(\theta)\rangle}$ for given candidate solutions θ. By the decomposition of the observable F into Pauli strings, we can write the expectation as

$$\langle F \rangle_{|\psi(\theta)\rangle} = \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \sum_{j=0}^{k-1} a_{k,j} \langle Z_k Z_j \rangle_{|\psi(\theta)\rangle} + \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} b_k \langle Z_k \rangle_{|\psi(\theta)\rangle}. \tag{6.33}$$

Following Sec. 5.2, all the $n(n-1)/2 + n$ expectations in (6.33) can be approximated via empirical averages obtained from multiple measurements in the computational basis of the n qubits in state $|\psi(\theta)\rangle$. Note, in fact, that the $n(n-1)/2 + n$ observables in (6.33) are compatible (see Sec. 5.3.5).

In practice, only a finite number N_S of measurements can be made by the classical optimizer, with each measurement requiring to run the PQC again. Randomness caused by the use of a finite number of

measurements in the estimation of the expectation of an observable is known as **shot noise**.

The optimization (6.31) is typically carried out in an iterative way by using **gradient-based optimization**. Accordingly, at the current iterate θ for the model parameter vector, the classical optimizer obtains an estimate $\hat{\nabla} L(\theta)$ of the gradient

$$\nabla L(\theta) = \left[\frac{\partial L(\theta)}{\partial \theta_1} \cdots \frac{\partial L(\theta)}{\partial \theta_D} \right]^T \tag{6.34}$$

of the expected value $L(\theta) = \langle F \rangle_{|\psi(\theta)\rangle}$. Note that the classical optimizer can generally only evaluate an estimate subject to shot noise owing to the randomness inherent in the measurements of the observable F. Having obtained estimate $\hat{\nabla} L(\theta)$, the classical optimizer updates the parameter vector as

$$\theta \leftarrow \theta - \gamma \hat{\nabla} L(\theta) \tag{6.35}$$

for some learning rate $\gamma > 0$. The procedure is repeated for a number of iterations. We will discuss how to estimate the gradient of the expected value of an observable in the next section.

An important practical problem related to the implementation of the outlined gradient descent method is that the landscape of the loss function $L(\theta)$ may not be well behaved as the number of qubits n grows large. Intuitively, this is due to the mismatch between the size of the parameter vector θ and the exponentially large dimension, 2^n, of the Hilbert space. A particularly important issue concerns the scaling of the partial derivatives of $L(\theta)$. In particular, it has been shown that, when the ansatz is sufficiently rich and the model parameters are randomly initialized, the partial derivatives tend exponentially to zero in probability as n grows. This is known as the **barren plateaus problem**. Possible solutions include selecting optimized initializations; implementing ansatzes that are well matched to the problem under study, e.g., by leveraging symmetries in the underlying distribution or mapping of interest; and exploring alternatives to gradient descent.

Such algorithmic alternatives encompass more advanced forms of local optimization, e.g., based on second-order information, as well as global optimization strategies. Global optimization may leverage **surrogate objective functions**, which extrapolate the value of the

loss $L(\theta)$ across different values of θ. One such method is provided by Bayesian optimization, which updates the surrogate sequentially based on the outcomes of previous measurements.

6.5.7 Other Applications of VQEs

In this section, we have presented VQE as a means to address the QUBO problem. More generally, following the discussion in Sec. 6.5.3, VQE can be adopted as a tool to tackle the problem of estimating the minimum eigenvalue of an observable F. While the observable arising from the solution of a QUBO is given in terms of Pauli Z operators, one may be more broadly interested in observables that can be written as arbitrary linear combinations of Pauli strings. Therefore, the observable F may include also the X and Y Pauli operators, as well as terms including more than two Pauli operators. When implementing VQE for this more general class of observables, it should be kept in mind that it is only possible to measure simultaneously observables derived from the same Pauli operator (see Sec. 5.3.5). Therefore, a general observable of this form would requires three separable, i.e., qubit by qubit, measurements in the X, Y, and Z bases.

6.6 Estimating the Gradient of the Expected Value of an Observable

In this section, we discuss the important problem of estimating the gradient of the expected value $\langle O \rangle_{|\psi(\theta)\rangle = U(\theta)|0\rangle}$ of an observable O under the parametrized state $|\psi(\theta)\rangle$ produced by a PQC $U(\theta)$. Following the notation in the previous section, we will write this quantity for short as the function of θ

$$L(\theta) = \langle O \rangle_{|\psi(\theta)\rangle = U(\theta)|0\rangle}. \tag{6.36}$$

As we have seen in the previous section, estimating the gradient $\nabla L(\theta)$ is a key step in the implementation of VQE solutions based on gradient descent (where the observable O equals the Ising Hamiltonian F in 6.21). Furthermore, as we will discuss in the next sections, it is also a central subroutine for quantum machine learning.

6.6.1 Numerical Differentiation

A natural idea is to estimate the gradient via numerical differentiation. Accordingly, the dth partial derivative in the gradient (6.34), for $d \in \{1, ..., D\}$, is first approximated as

$$\frac{\partial L(\theta)}{\partial \theta_d} \simeq \frac{L(\theta + \epsilon e_d) - L(\theta - \epsilon e_d)}{2\epsilon}, \tag{6.37}$$

where $\epsilon > 0$ is a small number and e_d is a one-hot D-dimensional vector with a 1 in the d-th position. It can be readily checked that the error of the approximation (6.37) is of the order $\mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2)$, and hence it can be controlled by selecting a sufficiently small ϵ. In words, the approximation (6.37) is obtained by **perturbing** each parameter θ_d by a small number ϵ in both positive and negative directions in order to evaluate the corresponding partial derivative.

The second step is to estimate both terms in the approximation (6.37) via empirical averages obtained from multiple measurements of the quantum state $|\psi(\theta)\rangle$ produced by the PQC. As illustrated in Fig. 6.12, for each d-th parameter θ_d, with $d \in \{1, ..., D\}$, we run the quantum circuit $2N_S$ times, where N_S is the number of runs, or shots, used to estimate the expected value of the observable. In particular, N_S measurements are used to estimate the expected value

$$L(\theta + \epsilon e_d) = \langle O \rangle_{|\psi(\theta+\epsilon e_d)\rangle = U(\theta+\epsilon e_d)|0\rangle}, \tag{6.38}$$

and N_S measurements are used to estimate the expected value

$$L(\theta - \epsilon e_d) = \langle O \rangle_{|\psi(\theta-\epsilon e_d)\rangle = U(\theta-\epsilon e_d)|0\rangle}. \tag{6.39}$$

It follows that a total number of $2DN_S$ measurements are needed to estimate the gradient vector at any given model parameter vector θ.

6.6.2 Parameter Shift Rule

In classical machine learning, with neural networks used as models, the gradient of the loss function can be computed at once via backpropagation. Backpropagation consists of two runs through the model, once in the forward direction and once backwards. Backpropagation is hence significantly more efficient than numerical differentiation, since the latter

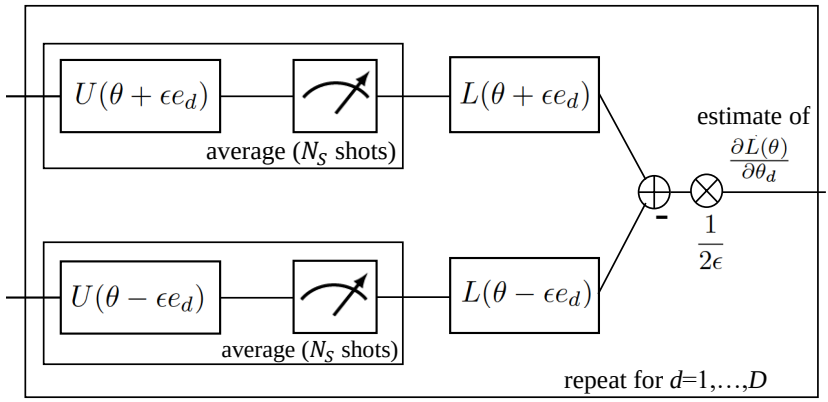


Figure 6.12: Numerical differentiation method to estimate the gradient of the expectation of an observable (6.36): For each dth entry $\partial L(\theta)/\partial\theta_d$ of the gradient, with $d = 1, ..., D$, one needs to carry out $2N_S$ separate measurements of the observable. N_S measurements, or shots, are used to estimate the expected value $L(\theta + \epsilon e_d)$, and N_S measurements are used to estimate the expected value $L(\theta - \epsilon e_d)$.

requires a number of runs through the model that is proportional to D. No quantum counterpart of backpropagation exists, since in quantum machine learning one does not have access to the internal workings of the model, i.e., the PQC, which is only accessible via measurements. Hence, the computation of the gradient is an inherently more complex, and less scalable, operation than in classical machine learning.

That said, when only, possibly multi-qubit, Pauli rotations are used as parametric gates in the PQC, a related approach, known as the **parameter shift rule**, can be proved to provide the exact gradient as the number of shots N_S goes to infinity. As we elaborate in this subsection, the parameter shift rule does *not* solve the scalability problem highlighted above, as it still requires a number of runs through the model proportional to D. The only advantage as compared to numerical differentiation is that the approximate equality in (6.37) can be turned into an equality without requiring the numerically problematic step of reducing the value of ϵ.

To elaborate, assume that each parameter θ_d contributes to the

PQC through a gate of the form

$$U_d(\theta) = \exp\left(-i\frac{\theta_d}{2}P_d\right), \tag{6.40}$$

where the generator P_d is a Pauli string. Note that the gate (6.40) may apply to an arbitrary number of qubits, and that it encompasses as special case the single- and two-qubit Pauli rotation gates discussed in Sec. 6.4. Therefore, mean-field ansatz, hardware-efficient ansatz, as well as generalizations thereof involving parametrized two-qubit Pauli rotations satisfy the assumption at hand.

Under this assumption, it can be proved that the partial derivative can be exactly computed as (see Appendix B)

$$\frac{\partial L(\theta)}{\partial \theta_d} = \frac{L\left(\theta + \frac{\pi}{2}e_d\right) - L\left(\theta - \frac{\pi}{2}e_d\right)}{2}. \tag{6.41}$$

Therefore, the use of the "numerical differentiation-like" expression in (6.41) does not entail any approximation, unlike (6.37). Note that the shifts of the parameters in (6.41) take the specific value $\pi/2$ (and that the normalization term in (6.37) is also modified in (6.41)).

As anticipated, and as detailed in Fig. 6.13, the parameter shift rule still entails the implementation of the same number $2DN_S$ of measurements. Furthermore, the procedure is equivalent to that depicted in Fig. 6.12 for numerical differentiation, with the only caveat that the shift takes the specific value $\pi/2$ and that the normalization constant is given by $1/2$.

6.7 Unsupervised Learning for Generative Models

As a first machine learning application of PQCs, this section studies the unsupervised learning problem of training probabilistic models generating random binary strings $x \in \{0,1\}^n$.

6.7.1 Generative Models

Given a training set $\mathcal{D}=\{x_1, ..., x_{|\mathcal{D}|}\}$ of $|\mathcal{D}|$ n-cbit strings, we would like to train a probabilistic model that is able to generate binary strings that

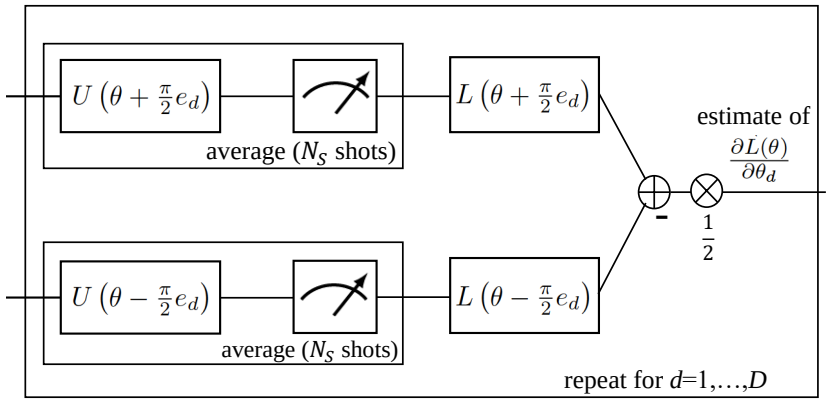


Figure 6.13: Parameter shift rule to estimate the gradient of the expectation of an observable (6.36): For each dth entry $\partial L(\theta)/\partial\theta_d$ of the gradient, with $d \in \{1, ..., D\}$, one needs to carry out $2N_S$ separate measurements of the observable. N_S measurements, or shots, are used to estimate the expected value $L(\theta + \pi/2e_d)$, and N_S measurements are used to estimate the expected value $L(\theta - \pi/2e_d)$.

are distributed in a manner that "resembles" the underlying, unknown, distribution of the data.

As an example, one may think of x as a black-and-white image, flattened into an n dimensional vector, with black and white pixels identified by entries of the vector equal to 1 and 0, respectively. The goal of unsupervised learning in this context is that of training a model that can produce black-and-white images that are "similar" to those in the training set $\mathcal{D}$.

In the rest of this subsection, we review the two main phases of operation of a parametrized generative model. At run time, when the model is used with a fixed parameter vector θ, the goal is to sample binary strings x from a desired distribution; while the training phase aims at optimizing the model parameter vector θ.

Sample generation: Probabilistic generative models produce randomized n-cbit strings from some parametric distribution $p(x|\theta)$, where θ is a vector of model parameters. Once trained, that is, once vector θ is optimized, the model is used to generate one, or more, random strings – e.g., images – drawn from distribution $p(x|\theta)$. The sampling process is

often denoted as $x \sim p(x|\theta)$.

Training: Training relies on the definition of a loss function $\ell(x|\theta)$, which describes how suitable the generative model defined by distribution $p(x|\theta)$ is as a mechanism to generate the specific string x. Loss functions for probabilistic models are also known as **scoring functions**. A scoring function should be a non-increasing function of $p(x|\theta)$: A model $p(x|\theta)$ that assigns a low probability to a data point x should be assigned a larger loss than a model $p(x|\theta)$ that assigns a high probability to a data point x. The most common scoring function is the **log-loss**

$$\ell(x|\theta) = -\log p(x|\theta), \tag{6.42}$$

also known as **cross-entropy loss** or **information theoretic suprise**, which is indeed a decreasing function of $p(x|\theta)$. An issue with the log-loss is that it is not well defined when the probability $p(x|\theta)$ is zero. To avoid this problem, one can modify the log-loss as

$$\ell(x|\theta) = -\log \max(\epsilon, p(x|\theta)) \tag{6.43}$$

for some small $\epsilon > 0$. Alternatively, one can adopt other scoring functions such as the linear loss

$$\ell(x|\theta) = 1 - p(x|\theta). \tag{6.44}$$

Once a training loss is determined, the **training loss** is defined as

$$L_{\mathcal{D}}(\theta) = \frac{1}{|\mathcal{D}|} \sum_{x \in \mathcal{D}} \ell(x|\theta). \tag{6.45}$$

The goal of training is typically defined as the minimization of the training loss (6.45) – a problem known as **empirical risk minimization**

$$\min_{\theta} L_{\mathcal{D}}(\theta). \tag{6.46}$$

6.7.2 Quantum Generative Models: Born Machines

A PQC implementing a unitary $U(\theta)$ on n qubits can be readily used as a generative model of randomized n-cbit strings. In this subsection, we elaborate on this application of PQCs by discussing both sample generation and training phases.

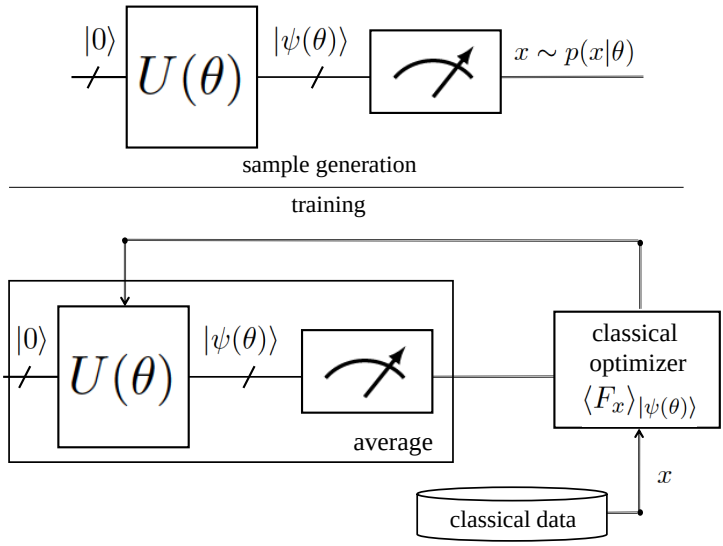


Figure 6.14: (top) For data generation, a Born machine implements a single run of the PQC $U(\theta)$ producing as output of the measurement a random cbit string $x \sim p(x|\theta)$. (bottom) For training, a classical optimizer applies gradient descent based on estimates of the expectations of data-dependent observables F_x.

Sample generation: As illustrated in the top part of Fig. 6.14, in order to generate a random n-cbit string, the PQC is run *once* and a standard measurement is made on the n qubits. The measurement produces an n-cbit string $x \sim p(x|\theta)$, where the distribution $p(x|\theta)$ is dictated by the Born rule. As a result, generative models based on PQCs are also known as **Born machines**.

It is worth reiterating that a sample $x \sim p(x|\theta)$ is produced with a *single* run of the PQC, hence not requiring multiple runs to average out the shot noise associated with quantum measurements. In this sense, shot noise is actually *useful* for generative models, as it is leveraged to produce random samples. This is indeed a common feature of probabilistic models, as we will also see in the next section for supervised learning.

By Born's rule, a Born machine implementing a PQC $U(\theta)$ produces a bit string $x \in \{0,1\}^n$ with probability

$$p(x|\theta) = |\langle x|\psi(\theta)\rangle|^2, \tag{6.47}$$

where we recall that $\langle x|\psi(\theta)\rangle$ is the complex amplitude of the state $|\psi(\theta)\rangle$ associated with the computational basis vector $|x\rangle$.

Training: Having defined the probability (6.47), one can in principle train a PQC by following the methodology described in Sec. 6.7.1. This requires the choice of a scoring function $\ell(x|\theta)$ as a non-increasing function of the probability $p(x|\theta)$ in (6.47), such as the log-loss

$$\ell(x|\theta) = -\log p(x|\theta) = -\log |\langle x|\psi(\theta)\rangle|^2. \tag{6.48}$$

Unlike the classical case, however, the probability (6.47) cannot be computed directly, and it needs to be estimated from multiple runs of the PQC.

In particular, as illustrated in the bottom part of Fig. 6.14, the loss function can be evaluated as a function of the expectation of a particular observable. This situation is similar to that studied in Sec. 6.5.5 for VQEs, with the difference that here the observable depends on the data point x. In fact, taking the log-loss (6.48) as an example, the loss function for a data point x can be written as

$$\ell(x|\theta) = -\log\langle\psi(\theta)|F_x|\psi(\theta)\rangle = -\log\langle F_x\rangle_{|\psi(\theta)\rangle}, \tag{6.49}$$

where we have introduced the *data-dependent* observable

$$F_x = |x\rangle\langle x|. \tag{6.50}$$

The ERM problem (6.46) with loss function (6.49) – or with a scoring function different from the log-loss – is typically addressed via gradient descent or stochastic gradient descent. Obtaining the gradient of the training loss

$$\nabla L_{\mathcal{D}}(\theta) = \frac{1}{|\mathcal{D}|}\sum_{x\in\mathcal{D}} \nabla\ell(x|\theta) \tag{6.51}$$

requires computing the individual gradients $\nabla\ell(x|\theta)$ for each training point. Since the loss function $\ell(x|\theta)$ depends of the expected value of an observable, namely F_x, the procedures described in Sec. 6.6 can be directly used for this purpose. Stochastic gradient descent adds a further source of noise in the estimate of the gradient by sampling from the data set $\mathcal{D}$ and by averaging the per-data point gradients $\nabla\ell(x|\theta)$ in (6.51) only for the randomly drawn mini-batch of samples.

We conclude this section by provide an alternative perspective on the loss function in (6.49). Accordingly, we can interpret the quantity $|\langle x|\psi(\theta)\rangle|^2$ in (6.47) as the **fidelity** between the two states $|x\rangle$ and $|\psi(\theta)\rangle$. The fidelity is an important metric in quantum theory that measures the degree to which one state can be "confused" for the other state based on measurement outputs. In this regard, a loss function defined as a non-increasing function of the fidelity $|\langle x|\psi(\theta)\rangle|^2$ can be thought of as measuring how well – or, rather, how poorly – the state $|\psi(\theta)\rangle$ represents the input data x encoded in state $|x\rangle$.

6.8 Supervised Learning

In this section, we study supervised learning tasks, in which we have a classical input x in the form of a real-valued vector and a classical target variable y. The target variable y is a discrete variable for classification problems, and a real-valued vector for regression problems. We start by discussing the most common way to encode the input x as an input to the PQC, and then cover separately probabilistic and deterministic models defined from the output of a PQC.

6.8.1 Angle Encoding

A common and efficient way to encode the input x is via **angle encoding**. Angle encoding defines a unitary transformation $U(x, \theta)$ that depends on the input vector x in a manner similar to the model parameters θ.

Specifically, angle encoding adopts a PQC $U(x, \theta)$ that alternates between unitaries dependent on input x and unitaries dependent on the model parameter vector θ as

$$U(\theta) = W_L(\theta)V_L(x) \cdot W_{L-1}(\theta)V_{L-1}(x) \cdots W_1(\theta)V_1(x). \tag{6.52}$$

Note that, in this architecture, the data x is potentially entered multiple times, i.e., at each layer l. This process is also known as **data re-uploading**. Alternatively, one could also enter data x progressively, with a different fragment of vector x encoded at each layer. The unitaries dependent on x and θ – i.e., $V_l(x)$ and $W_l(\theta)$ for $l \in \{1, ..., L\}$ –

consist of a cascade of single-qubit rotations and, possibly parametrized, entangling gates as discussed in Sec. 6.4. The name "angle encoding" reflects the standard choice of parameterized single- or two-qubit Pauli rotations for the unitaries $V_l(x)$, so that the entries of vector x play the role of angles defining such rotations.

The two types of unitaries, $V_l(x)$ and $W_l(\theta)$, may follow different ansatzes. For instance, in some architectures, one uses single- and two-qubit rotations for the unitaries $V_l(x)$, while fixed entangling gates are used for the unitaries $W_l(\theta)$ as in the hardware-efficient ansatz.

In order to enable the encoding of an input $x = [x_0, ..., x_{M-1}]$ containing M real numbers, angle encoding typically uses at least M qubits. For example, one could use a simple mean-field ansatz for the unitary $V_l(x)$, with

$$V_l(x) = R_P(x_0) \otimes \cdots \otimes R_P(x_{M-1}), \tag{6.53}$$

where $R_P(\cdot)$ is some Pauli rotation. Accordingly, a separate rotation – each determined by an entry of the vector x – is applied to a distinct qubit. As mentioned, the ansatz can be made more complex, and expressive, by adding also two-qubit gates. As a more general ansatz for the unitary $V_l(x)$, it is also common to follow a layer defined as in (6.53) with other layers of the form

$$V_l(x) = R_P(g(x_0)) \otimes \cdots \otimes R_P(g(x_{M-1})), \tag{6.54}$$

where $g(\cdot)$ is some function, i.e., $g(x) = x^2$.

The output state of the PQC $U(x, \theta)$, i.e.,

$$|\psi(x, \theta)\rangle = U(x, \theta)|0\rangle, \tag{6.55}$$

is a function of the input x, and is known as the **quantum embedding** of the classical input x. Quantum embedding $|\psi(x, \theta)$ "lifts" the classical input x from the space of M-dimensional real vectors to a quantum state in the 2^n-dimensional Hilbert space. Note that the embedding can be controlled via the model parameter θ.

We refer to Sec. 6.10 for a discussion of alternative encoding methods that differ from angle encoding in terms of number of required qubits and information processing models.

6.8.2 Probabilistic Models

In supervised learning, each data point consists of a pair (x, y), with x being a real-valued input and y being the discrete or real-valued target variable. We are given a training set $\mathcal{D}=\{(x_1, y_1), ..., (x_{|\mathcal{D}|}, y_{|\mathcal{D}|})\}$ of $|\mathcal{D}|$ such examples, and we would like to train a predictive model that maps an input x to an output y in such a way that the mapping reflects well the underlying, unknown, data distribution. We distinguish between probabilistic and deterministic models, and we consider first probabilistic models, whose behavior is similar to that of the generative models covered in the previous section.

We specifically focus on probabilistic models for **classification**, in which the target variable is a binary string $y \in \{0, 1\}^m$ with $m \leq n$. This accounts for settings in which the input x belongs to one of 2^m classes, which are indexed by the binary string y. A probabilistic model outputs a random binary label y given an input x with a distribution defined by a parametrized conditional distribution $p(y|x, \theta)$.

We distinguish between inference and training phases. In the inference phase, the model parameters are kept fixed, and the model is used to classify a new, test, input x. In contrast, training aims at optimizing the model parameter vector θ.

Inference: Inference in probabilistic models amounts to the random generation of a label $y \sim p(y|x, \theta)$ given the input x to be classified. A single sample is sufficient to make a point prediction, and multiple samples can be used if one is also interested in quantifying uncertainty.

Training: Training of probabilistic models relies on the definition of a loss function $\ell(x, y|\theta)$ that measures the (lack of) accuracy of the model $p(y|x, \theta)$ when evaluated on an input-output pair (x, y). As for generative models, the loss function is defined as a non-increasing (scoring) function of $p(y|x, \theta)$: A model $p(y|x, \theta)$ that assigns a low probability to the label y of a data point (x, y) is assigned a larger loss than a model $p(y|x, \theta)$ that assigns a high probability to y. The most common scoring function is the **log-loss**

$$\ell(x, y|\theta) = -\log p(y|x, \theta), \tag{6.56}$$

which is also known as **cross-entropy loss**. Other scoring functions

include the linear loss $\ell(x, y|\theta) = 1 - p(y|x, \theta)$, which measures the probability of error when the true label is y given input x.

The goal of training is typically defined in terms of the **empirical risk minimization** problem (6.46) with **training loss**

$$L_{\mathcal{D}}(\theta) = \frac{1}{|\mathcal{D}|} \sum_{(x,y)\in\mathcal{D}} \ell(x, y|\theta). \tag{6.57}$$

6.8.3 Probabilistic Quantum Models

As illustrated in Fig. 6.15, a probabilistic model for classification can be implemented via a PQC in a manner similar to a Born machine. In this subsection, we first discuss how to implement inference via probabilistic quantum models and then we briefly describe the problem of training such models.

Inference: Consider first inference, and hence assume that the model parameter vector θ is fixed. Given any input x to be classified, the PQC $U(x, \theta)$ produces the quantum embedding $|\psi(x, \theta)\rangle$. To perform classification, we need to extract a binary string y of m cbits – the label assigned by the model to input x – from this state. This can be done by implementing a projective measurement with 2^m possible outputs (see Sec. 5.2). For instance, for binary classification ($m = 1$), one can apply a parity measurement, whereby class $y = 0$ is selected if the parity is even and $y = 1$ if the parity is odd (see Sec. 5.2.8 for a description of the case $n = 2$).

To formalize the outlined approach, each possible output $y \in \{0, 1\}^m$ is assigned to a projection matrix Π_y to define a projective measurement $\{\Pi_y\}_{y=0}^{2^m-1}$. As illustrated in the top part of Fig. 6.15, a random label y is produced by the circuit at inference time by making a single measurement of the quantum embedding $|\psi(x, \theta)\rangle$. Therefore, in order to carry out classification on any given input x, one does not need to average the output of the measurement. Rather, the model leverages shot noise for sampling.

By the generalized Born rule (3.18), the outlined quantum probabilistic models implements a stochastic mapping between x and y

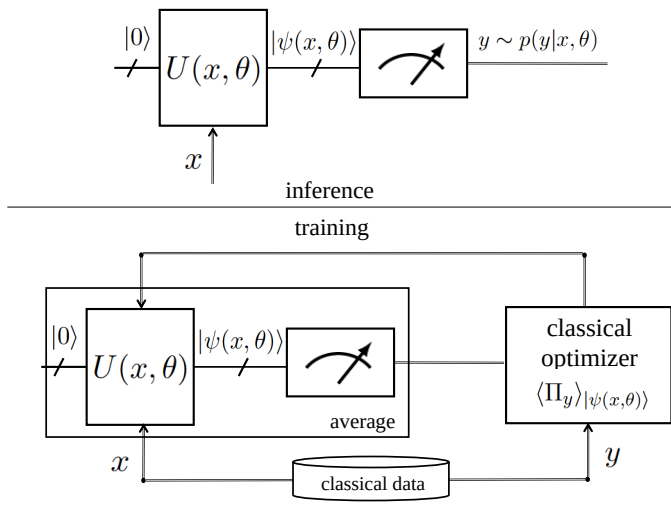


Figure 6.15: (top) For inference, a probabilistic quantum model implements a single run of the PQC $U(x, \theta)$, which produces a discrete label y via a projective measurement. (b) For training, a classical optimizer applies gradient descent based on estimates of the expectations of data-dependent observables Π_y.

defined by the probability

$$p(y|x,\theta) = \langle \psi(x,\theta)|\Pi_y|\psi(x,\theta)\rangle = \langle \Pi_y \rangle_{|\psi(x,\theta)\rangle}. \tag{6.58}$$

As in the case of generative models, by (6.58), the probability $p(y|x,\theta)$ equals the expectation of a data-dependent observable. Specifically, here the observable depends on the label y, and is given by the projector Π_y. (Recall that projection matrices are Hermitian, and hence they are also well-defined observables.)

Training: A loss functions may be directly defined via the log-loss

$$\ell(x,y|\theta) = -\log p(y|x,\theta) = -\log \langle \Pi_y \rangle_{|\psi(x,\theta)\rangle}, \tag{6.59}$$

or some other scoring rule. The loss is expressed in terms of the expectation of an observable dependent on the target variable y. As depicted in the bottom part of Fig. 6.15, estimating the value of the loss function, as well as its gradient, hence requires repeating the measurement of the observable multiple times. The ERM problem (6.46) with training loss (6.57) can be addressed by following similar steps as described in Sec. 6.7.2 for generative models.

6.8.4 Deterministic Models

A deterministic model implements a parametrized functions $h(x|\theta)$ of the input x that returns a vector of real numbers. Typical implementations in classical machine learning adopt a neural network as the parametrized function $h(x|\theta)$. Deterministic models can be used for both regression and classification.

Inference: In the case of regression, at inference time, given an input x, the model may directly use the output $h_M(x|\theta)$ as an estimate of the target variable y. In the case of classification, the function $h(x|\theta)$ is passed to an activation function to produce either a hard decision or a probability distribution over the possible outcome values. For binary classification, we can take the sign of the scalar-valued function $h(x|\theta)$ to make a hard decision; or "squash" the output $h(x|\theta)$ using, e.g., a sigmoid activation function, to produce a probability

$$\Pr[y=1|x,\theta] = \sigma(h(x|\theta)) = \frac{1}{1+\exp(-h(x|\theta))} \tag{6.60}$$

as in logistic regression. Similarly, for multi-class classification, the function $h(x|\theta)$ returns a vector that defines the logits to be fed to a softmax activation function. This produces a vector of probabilities on the class indices.

Training: For training, the standard approach is again to tackle the ERM problem (6.46) with training loss defined as in (6.57). For example, for scalar regression, one can adopt the squared loss

$$\ell(x, y|\theta) = (y - h(x|\theta))^2, \tag{6.61}$$

while, for binary classification with activation function (6.60), one can choose the cross-entropy loss

$$\ell(x, y|\theta) = -y \log \sigma(h(x|\theta)) - (1 - y)\sigma(-h(x|\theta)). \tag{6.62}$$

6.8.5 Deterministic Quantum Models

As illustrated in Fig. 6.16, a PQC can be used to implement a deterministic function $h_M(x|\theta)$ by measuring the expected value of an observable M under the quantum embedding $|\psi(x, \theta)\rangle$.

Inference: Given an input x, the PQC is run multiple times in order to estimate the expectation

$$h_M(x|\theta) = \langle \psi(x, \theta)|M|\psi(x, \theta)\rangle = \langle M\rangle_{|\psi(x,\theta)\rangle}, \tag{6.63}$$

where we have made explicit the dependence of the function $h_M(x|\theta)$ on the observable M. The function $h_M(x|\theta)$ can then be used as described in the previous subsection to carry out regression and classification decisions. Note that vector functions $h_M(x|\theta)$ can be similarly implemented by measuring multiple observables, one for each entry of the vector $h_M(x|\theta)$.

Importantly, unlike probabilistic models, deterministic models require multiple runs of the PQC in order to mitigate the effect of shot noise in estimating the expectation (6.63) even during inference. This is illustrated in the top part of Fig. 6.16.

Function $h_M(x|\theta)$ in (6.63) can be rewritten as

$$h_M(x|\theta) = \text{tr}(M\rho(x, \theta)), \tag{6.64}$$

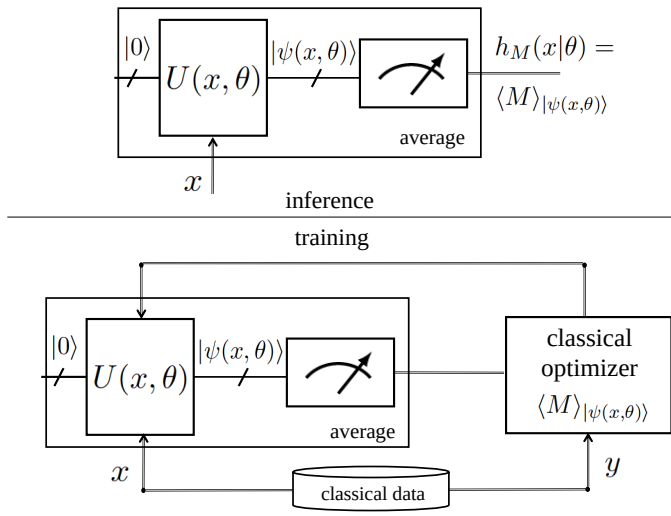


Figure 6.16: (top) For inference, a deterministic quantum model implements multiple runs of the PQC $U(x, \theta)$ to estimate the expected value of an observable M (or multiple observables). (bottom) For training, a classical optimizer applies gradient descent based on estimates of the expectations of observable M.

where we have defined the density matrix $\rho(x,\theta) = |\psi(x,\theta)\rangle\langle\psi(x,\theta)|$. This expression makes it clear that the function $h_M(x|\theta)$ is linear in the embedding density state $\rho(x,\theta)$. Therefore, a deterministic quantum model effectively implements a linear discriminative functions in the space of quantum embeddings whose weights are defined by the choice of the observable. As such, deterministic quantum models are akin to classical **kernel** methods in that they operate over a large feature space – the Hilbert space of dimension 2^n – via linear operations.

Training: Having defined the model output function as in (6.63), loss functions can be directly introduced as detailed in the previous subsection. For example, with the quadratic loss function (6.61) we have

$$\ell(x, y|\theta) = (y - h_M(x|\theta))^2, \tag{6.65}$$

which is a function of the expected value $\langle M\rangle_{|\psi(x,\theta)\rangle}$ of observable M, as well as of the target variable y. Given this dependence on the expectation of an observable, the ERM problem can be again addressed by using the optimization methods discussed in the context of generative models in Sec. 6.7.2 (see the bottom part of Fig. 6.16).

6.9 Beyond Generic Ansatzes

In some problems, it may be possible to choose specialized ansatzes that follow a more principled approach than the generic ansatzes described in Sec. 6.4. There are at least two ways to do this:

- mimic the operation of classical neural networks, while ideally maintaining the superposition of the quantum states being processed; and
- relax and parametrize a handcrafted quantum algorithm.

In this section, we briefly review these two alternatives.

6.9.1 Mimicking Classical Neural Networks

Consider first the class of ansatzes that aims at mimicking the way in which neurons operate in a classical neural network. A classical neuron

produces an output as a function $g\left(\sum_k w_k x_k\right)$ of a linear combination $\sum_k w_k x_k$, with weights $\{w_k\}$, of the inputs $\{x_k\}$ to the neuron. Activation functions $g(\cdot)$ include the sigmoid function $\sigma(a) = (1 + \exp(-a))$ and the rectified linear unity (ReLU) $\max(0, \cdot)$.

A quantum neuron mimicking the operation of a classical deterministic neuron would produce an output of the form $g\left(\sum_k w_k x_k\right)$ when the inputs are in the computational basis, i.e., classical, while also being able to operate on superposition states. Note that implementing such a neuron is not straightfoward due to the linearity of quantum evolutions, and it typically requires the introduction of mechanisms involving measurements.

As an alternative, a classical probabilistic neuron produces randomized outputs whose probabilities depend on non-linear functions of the linear combination $\sum_k w_k x_k$. An example is given by a binary classical neuron, which outputs 1 with probability $\sigma\left(\sum_k w_k x_k\right)$. Classical neurons of this type can be implemented by using measurements as explained in Sec. 3.2.5. Note that such measurements destroy superposition and entanglement.

6.9.2 Relaxing Handcrafted Quantum Algorithms

An example of the second type of approaches, which relax and parametrize a handcrafted quantum algorithm, is given by the Quantum Approximate Optimization Algorithm (QAOA). Specifically, QAOA provides a problem-dependent ansatz for the VQE applied to an Ising Hamiltonian (see Sec. 6.5.5). QAOA uses knowledge of the loss function observable F in (6.21) to define the ansatz of the quantum circuit $U(\theta)$ producing the state $|\psi(\theta)\rangle$. The ansatz assumed by QAOA consists of a first layer of Hadamard gates, producing the state $|+\rangle \otimes |+\rangle \cdots |+\rangle$, followed by multiple layers. Each layer alternates between the unitary $U(F, \gamma) = \exp(-i\gamma F)$ dependent on the Ising Hamiltonian F and the unitary $U(B, \beta) = \exp(-i\beta B)$, where $B = \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} X_k$ with X_k being the Pauli X-operator applied to the kth qubit. Parameters γ and β can be optimized. The circuit provides an asymptotic approximation of the so-called quantum adiabatic algorithm as the number of layers goes to infinity.

6.10 Beyond Angle Encoding

In this chapter we have so far adopted angle encoding as a mechanism to convert classical information, in the form of a real vector x, into a quantum state. As we have introduced in Sec. 6.8.1, angle encoding is an **analog** strategy in which the M entries of vector x are directly mapped to the continuous-valued angles of at least M parametrized quantum gates. In this section, we briefly review two alternative ways to encode classical information in a quantum state, and we also give an example of the type of inference methods that may be enabled by such methods.

6.10.1 Amplitude Encoding

Like angle encoding, amplitude encoding is an **analog** strategy, which is, however, exponentially more efficient in terms of the number of required qubits. Amplitude encoding maps each entry x_k of vector x into the k-th amplitude of a quantum state. Accordingly, the encoded state, or quantum embedding, for data vector x is

$$|\psi(x)\rangle = \sum_{k=0}^{M-1} f(x_k)|k\rangle, \tag{6.66}$$

where $f(\cdot)$ is some function that ensures the normalization condition $\sum_{k=0}^{M-1} |f(x_k)|^2 = 1$. This equality may be guaranteed, e.g., by setting $f(x_k) = 1/(2^{n/2}) \exp(ix_k)$ or by normalizing vector x and then setting $f(x) = x$.

Amplitude encoding requires a number of qubits, n, equal to the logarithm of the size of the input, i.e., $n = \log_2(M)$ (assuming that $\log_2(M)$ is an integer). This provides an exponential improvement in terms of efficiency of the input representation with respect to angle encoding. The computational complexity of amplitude encoding – that is, the number of quantum operations necessary to produce state (6.66) – is, however, generally linear in the size M of the input as for angle encoding.

6.10.2 Basis Encoding

Unlike angle and amplitude encoding, basis encoding is a **digital** strategy, and it enables the encoding of an *entire data set* $\mathcal{D}$ of data points x into a single quantum state. As we detail next, the number of qubits dictates the resolution of the representation of the input x.

Basis encoding first converts each data point x in the binary domain, producing a binary string $x_b \in \{0,1\}^n$. Note that the number of bits n determines the precision level of the binary representation. Then, the entire data set $\mathcal{D}$ is mapped to the quantum state

$$|\psi(\mathcal{D})\rangle = \frac{1}{Z}\sum_{x\in\mathcal{D}} |x_b\rangle, \tag{6.67}$$

where Z is a suitable constant to ensure a unitary norm. State (6.67) encodes a superposition of all entries of the data set $\mathcal{D}$.

6.10.3 Non-Parametric Quantum Machine Learning

How can quantum states such as (6.67) be used in machine learning applications? In this section, we outline an approach for **density estimation** that is akin to **non-parametric** methods in classical machine learning. This is in the sense that the approach makes decisions by using the entire data set, in the form of state (6.67), without requiring a training stage.

Given a data set $\mathcal{D}=\{x_1, ..., x_{|\mathcal{D}|}\}$ of $|\mathcal{D}|$ samples, density estimation aims at estimating the probability distribution $p(x)$ underlying the generation of the data. Consider a new point x^* at which we would like to estimate the distribution $p(x^*)$. Intuitively, the probability $p(x^*)$ should be larger the more "similar" vector x^* is to the data points in the training set $\mathcal{D}$. Therefore, one can conceive the use of the inner product

$$\hat{p}(x^*) \propto |\langle\psi(x^*)|\psi(\mathcal{D})\rangle|^2 \tag{6.68}$$

as a non-parametric (unnormalized) estimate of probability distribution $p(x^*)$. The estimate $\hat{p}(x^*)$ can be evaluated as the expectation of the observable $|\psi(x^*)\rangle\langle\psi(x^*)|$ under the encoded state (6.67).

6.11 Conclusions

This chapter has provided an introduction to quantum machine learning, focusing on the most common setting in which data are classical and processing is quantum. For this "CQ" case, a parametrized quantum circuit (PQC) is optimized via a classical processor by minimizing estimates of the expected value of some observables, which generally depend on (classical) data. Gradient-based optimization for PQCs is significantly less efficient than its counterpart for standard machine learning models. In fact, estimating the gradient entails a complexity that scales linearly with the number of model parameters, and it requires multiple runs through the model in order to mitigate measurement shot noise.

The inefficiency in estimating gradients is one of the many differences between the fields of quantum and classical machine learning. While classical machine learning is typically applied to unstructured, large data sets with the goal of maximizing accuracy, "CQ" quantum machine learning is often applied to small, well-structured, data sets and "quantum advantages" are often measured in terms of efficiency. Efficiency is often evaluated in terms of the number of physical resources needed to implement a model: number of model parameters, number of bits/ qubits, training time, inference time, and so on. While it is possible to prove such advantages for very specific problems, the current practice appears to be that of making limited comparisons via experiments, or sidestepping the question of "quantum advantages" altogether.

Rather than focusing on establishing formal advantages, research in the field may focus on establishing effective building blocks for quantum machine learning models; understanding the relative merits of deterministic and probabilistic models; evaluating the impact of different data encoding techniques; developing effective software platforms; and investigating at a theoretical level the problem of generalization for given ansatzes.

6.12 Recommended Resources

Quantum machine learning is an emerging, very active, field of research. A useful starting point is the book [13], which contains many pointers to papers published before 2021. The barren plateau problem is detailed in [14]. An example of QC machine learning is provided by [15]. Quantum generative adversarial networks are presented in [16]; while quantum variational autoencoders for quantum compression are studied in [17]. For more recent work, the reader is referred to the online repository arXiv (https://arxiv.org/), in which most up-to-date pre-prints can be found.

6.13 Problems

1. Write the matrix representation (in the computational basis) of the three unitaries $Z \otimes Z$, CZ, and $R_{ZZ}(\theta) = \exp\left(-i\frac{\theta}{2} Z \otimes Z\right)$. Which one(s) are separable and why? Obtain eigenvalues and eigenvectors. Which one(s) are also observables?

2. Show that the Pauli ZZ-rotation can be implemented using two CNOT gates and a Pauli Z-rotation.

3. Prove that using only Pauli Y-rotations allows the mean-field ansatz to produce all possible vectors in the computational basis.

4. Describe the quantum adiabatic theorem and the quantum adiabatic algorithm (see recommended resources).

5. Derive the parameter shift rule (see Appendix B).

6. Demonstrate some practical examples of applications of quantum machine learning methods. (You can browse arXiv or other repositories.)

7. Describe an example of a quantum-quantum machine learning problem.

Appendix A: On Unitaries with Pauli Strings as Generators

In this appendix, we derive some useful properties of parametrized unitaries whose generators are given by Pauli strings. Examples include single-qubit and two-qubit Pauli rotation gates. Such unitaries can be written as

$$U(\theta) = \exp\left(-i\frac{\theta}{2}P\right), \tag{6.69}$$

where P is a Pauli string.

A Pauli string P has two distinct eigenvalues $+1$ and -1. Therefore, it can be expressed as $P = \Pi_0 - \Pi_1$, where $\Pi_0 = \sum_{x:\ \lambda_x = 1} v_x$ is the projection matrix into the subspace spanned by the eigenvectors $|v_x\rangle$ of matrix P that are associated with eigenvalue $+1$, and $\Pi_1 = \sum_{x:\ \lambda_x = -1} v_x$ is the projection matrix into the subspace spanned by the eigenvectors $|v_x\rangle$ associated with eigenvalue -1. Note that $\Pi_0 + \Pi_1 = I$, since the set of all eigenvectors span the entire Hilbert space.

Given the above, and using the definition (1.46) of a function of a normal matrix, we obtain the equality

$$\begin{aligned}
U(\theta) &= \sum_{x=0}^{2^n-1} \exp\left(-i\frac{\theta}{2}\lambda_x\right) v_x \\
&= \Pi_0 \exp\left(-i\frac{\theta}{2}\right) + \Pi_1 \exp\left(i\frac{\theta}{2}\right) \\
&= \Pi_0 \left(\cos\left(\frac{\theta}{2}\right) - i\sin\left(\frac{\theta}{2}\right)\right) + \Pi_1 \left(\cos\left(\frac{\theta}{2}\right) + i\sin\left(\frac{\theta}{2}\right)\right) \\
&= \cos\left(\frac{\theta}{2}\right)(\Pi_0 + \Pi_1) - i\sin\left(\frac{\theta}{2}\right)(\Pi_0 - \Pi_1) \\
&= \cos\left(\frac{\theta}{2}\right) I - i\sin\left(\frac{\theta}{2}\right) P.
\end{aligned} \tag{6.70}$$

Note that if we set $\theta = \pm\pi/2$, we get

$$U\left(\pm\frac{\pi}{2}\right) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(I \mp iP). \tag{6.71}$$

Appendix B: The Parameter Shift Rule

Consider one of the scalar parameters of the parameter vector $\theta = [\theta_1, ..., \theta_D]^T$, say θ_d. We are interested in computing the partial derivative

$\partial \langle O \rangle_{|\psi(\theta)\rangle} / \partial \theta_d$ for the expectation

$$\langle O \rangle_{|\psi(\theta)\rangle} = \langle \psi(\theta) | O | \psi(\theta) \rangle = \langle 0 | U^\dagger(\theta) O U(\theta) | 0 \rangle \tag{6.72}$$

of some observable O under the output state $U(\theta)|0\rangle$ produced by a PQC. All the loss functions we have considered in the problems studied above depend on such expectations. Note that, in some cases, the unitary $U(\theta)$ may also be a function of the input data x, and this can be easily accommodated in the analysis by considering unitaries of the form $U(x, \theta)$. We also emphasize that loss functions of the form (6.72) are also relevant for QQ problems, in which the observable O may depend on the target quantum state.

As discussed, in many PQCs of interest, parameter θ_d enters as part of the overall unitary in a single gate of the form

$$U_d(\theta_d) = \exp\left(-i \frac{\theta_d}{2} G_d\right), \tag{6.73}$$

where G_d is the generator Hermitian matrix. Examples of gates (6.73) include the Pauli rotation matrices used in the hardware-efficient ansatz. Note that, if the parameter θ_d entered multiple gates of the form (6.73), the corresponding partial derivatives to be calculated in this appendix would need to be summed.

According to the assumption stated in the previous paragraph, we can write the overall unitary transformation as

$$U(\theta) = V(\theta_{-d}) U_d(\theta_d) W(\theta_{-d}) \tag{6.74}$$

for some unitaries $V(\theta_{-d})$ and $W(\theta_{-d})$ representing the gates applied before and after the d-th gate $U_d(\theta_d)$. Unitaries $V(\theta_{-d})$ and $W(\theta_{-d})$ generally depend on the parameters in vector θ other than the parameter θ_d. This dependence is captured by the notation θ_{-d}.

Using (6.74), we write the expected observable as

$$\langle O \rangle_{|\psi(\theta)\rangle} = \langle \phi_d | U_d^\dagger(\theta_d) R_d U_d(\theta_d) | \phi_d \rangle, \tag{6.75}$$

where $|\phi_d\rangle = W(\theta_{-d})|0\rangle$ and $R_d = V(\theta_{-d})^\dagger O V(\theta_{-d})$. Note that R_d is Hermitian. This way, we have incorporated gates following and preceding the dth gate in the quantum state $|\phi_d\rangle$ and in the observable R_d,

respectively. The subscript in $|\phi_d\rangle$ and R_d is used to emphasize that both quantities depend on the index d.

The partial derivative is computed as

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{\partial\langle O\rangle_{|\psi(\theta)\rangle}}{\partial\theta_d} =& \frac{\partial\langle\phi_d|U_d^\dagger(\theta_d)R_dU_d(\theta_d)|\phi_d\rangle}{\partial\theta_d}\\ =&\langle\phi_d|U_d^\dagger(\theta_d)R_d\nabla_{\theta_d}U_d(\theta_d)|\phi_d\rangle\\ &+\langle\phi_d|\nabla_{\theta_d}U_d^\dagger(\theta_d)R_dU_d(\theta_d)|\phi_d\rangle,\end{aligned} \tag{6.76}$$

where $\nabla_{\theta_d}U_d(\theta_d)$ represents the matrix of derivatives of the unitary $U_d(\theta_d)$, and a similar definition applies to $\nabla_{\theta_d}U_d^\dagger(\theta_d)$. We have

$$\begin{aligned}\nabla_{\theta_d}U_d(\theta_d) &= \nabla_{\theta_d}\exp\left(-i\frac{\theta_d}{2}G_d\right)\\ &= -\frac{1}{2}iG_d\exp\left(-i\frac{\theta_d}{2}G_d\right) = -\frac{1}{2}iG_dU_d(\theta_d)\end{aligned} \tag{6.77}$$

and

$$\nabla_{\theta_d}U_d^\dagger(\theta_d) = \frac{i}{2}G_dU_d^\dagger(\theta_d). \tag{6.78}$$

We conclude that the following equalities hold

$$\begin{aligned}U_d(\theta_d) + 2\nabla_{\theta_d}U_d(\theta_d) &= U_d(\theta_d) - iG_dU_d(\theta_d)\\ &= (I - iG_d)U_d(\theta_d)\\ &= \sqrt{2}U_d(\pi/2)U_d(\theta_d)\\ &= \sqrt{2}U_d(\theta_d + \pi/2),\end{aligned} \tag{6.79}$$

where we have used (6.71) for the third equality. Similarly, we have

$$U_d(\theta_d) - 2\nabla_{\theta_d}U_d(\theta_d) = \sqrt{2}U_d(-\pi/2)U_d(\theta_d) = \sqrt{2}U_d(\theta_d - \pi/2). \tag{6.80}$$

Finally, we write the partial derivative (6.76) as

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{\partial\langle O\rangle_{|\psi(\theta)\rangle}}{\partial\theta_d} =&\frac{1}{4}\langle\phi_d|(U_d(\theta_d) + 2\nabla_{\theta_d}U_d(\theta_d))^\dagger R_d(U_d(\theta_d) + 2\nabla_{\theta_d}U_d(\theta_d))|\phi_d\rangle\\ &-\frac{1}{4}\langle\phi_d|(U_d(\theta_d) - 2\nabla_{\theta_d}U_d(\theta_d))^\dagger R_d(U_d(\theta_d) - 2\nabla_{\theta_d}U_d(\theta_d))|\phi_d\rangle,\\ =&\frac{1}{2}\langle\phi_d|U_d(\theta_d + \pi/2)^\dagger R_dU_d(\theta_d + \pi/2)|\phi_d\rangle\\ &-\frac{1}{2}\langle\phi_d|U_d(\theta_d - \pi/2)^\dagger R_dU_d(\theta_d - \pi/2)|\phi_d\rangle,\end{aligned} \tag{6.81}$$

where the first equality can be checked by direct comparison with (6.76), and the second equality follows from (6.79)-(6.80). This concludes the derivation.

Acknowledgements

I would like to thank Prof. Bipin Rajendran, Dr. Hari Chittoor, Dr. Sharu Jose, and Dr. Ivana Nikoloska, who have been an ideal company during my ongoing journey of discovery of the field of quantum machine learning. My gratitude goes also to the other members of my research team at King's who have provided useful feedback, comments, and encouragement: Kfir Cohen, Dr. Sangwoo Park, Clement Ruah, and Matteo Zecchin.

References

[1] N. D. Mermin, *Quantum computer science: an introduction*. Cambridge University Press, 2007.

[2] R. J. Lipton and K. W. Regan, *Introduction to quantum algorithms via linear algebra*. MIT Press, 2021.

[3] M. A. Nielsen and I. L. Chuang, *Quantum computation and quantum information*. Cambridge University Press, 2010.

[4] L. Susskind and A. Friedman, *Quantum mechanics: the theoretical minimum*. Basic Books, 2014.

[5] R. Penrose, *The road to reality: A complete guide to the laws of the universe*. Random House, 2005.

[6] C. J. Wood, J. D. Biamonte, and D. G. Cory, "Tensor networks and graphical calculus for open quantum systems," *arXiv preprint arXiv:1111.6950*, 2011.

[7] M. M. Wilde, *Quantum information theory*. Cambridge University Press, 2013.

[8] J. Watrous, *The theory of quantum information*. Cambridge University Press, 2018.

[9] P. Kaye, R. Laflamme, and M. Mosca, *An introduction to quantum computing*. Oxford Uuniversity Press, 2006.

[10] J. A. Bergou, M. Hillery, and M. Saffman, *Quantum information processing*. Springer, 2021.

[11] J. D. Hidary and J. D. Hidary, *Quantum computing: an applied approach*, vol. 1. Springer, 2019.

[12] P. P. Rohde, *The quantum Internet: The second quantum revolution*. Cambridge University Press, 2021.

[13] M. Schuld and F. Petruccione, *Machine learning with quantum computers*. Springer, 2021.

[14] J. R. McClean, S. Boixo, V. N. Smelyanskiy, R. Babbush, and H. Neven, "Barren plateaus in quantum neural network training landscapes," *Nature Communications*, vol. 9, no. 1, 2018, pp. 1–6.

[15] A. Youssry, C. Ferrie, and M. Tomamichel, "Efficient online quantum state estimation using a matrix-exponentiated gradient method," *New Journal of Physics*, vol. 21, no. 3, 2019.

[16] S. Lloyd and C. Weedbrook, "Quantum generative adversarial learning," *Physical Review Letters*, vol. 121, no. 4, 2018.

[17] J. Romero, J. P. Olson, and A. Aspuru-Guzik, "Quantum autoencoders for efficient compression of quantum data," *Quantum Science and Technology*, vol. 2, no. 4, 2017.